

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ  
الحمد لله الذي قدم الإنذار على التعذيب وعلم الأطباء  
العلم الكيفية الریاضة والنهزیة وصلى الله على الشرف  
سائس وأعلم طیب محمد المنعوت إلى البعید والقیب  
وتلى أصحابه وأتباعه ملجیب حیث قلب یوحی  
أما بعد فالی رأیت القصاص قد تروكوا ما یصح ذكروه  
والله اعلم بالشیء والقیب والقیب والقیب والقیب

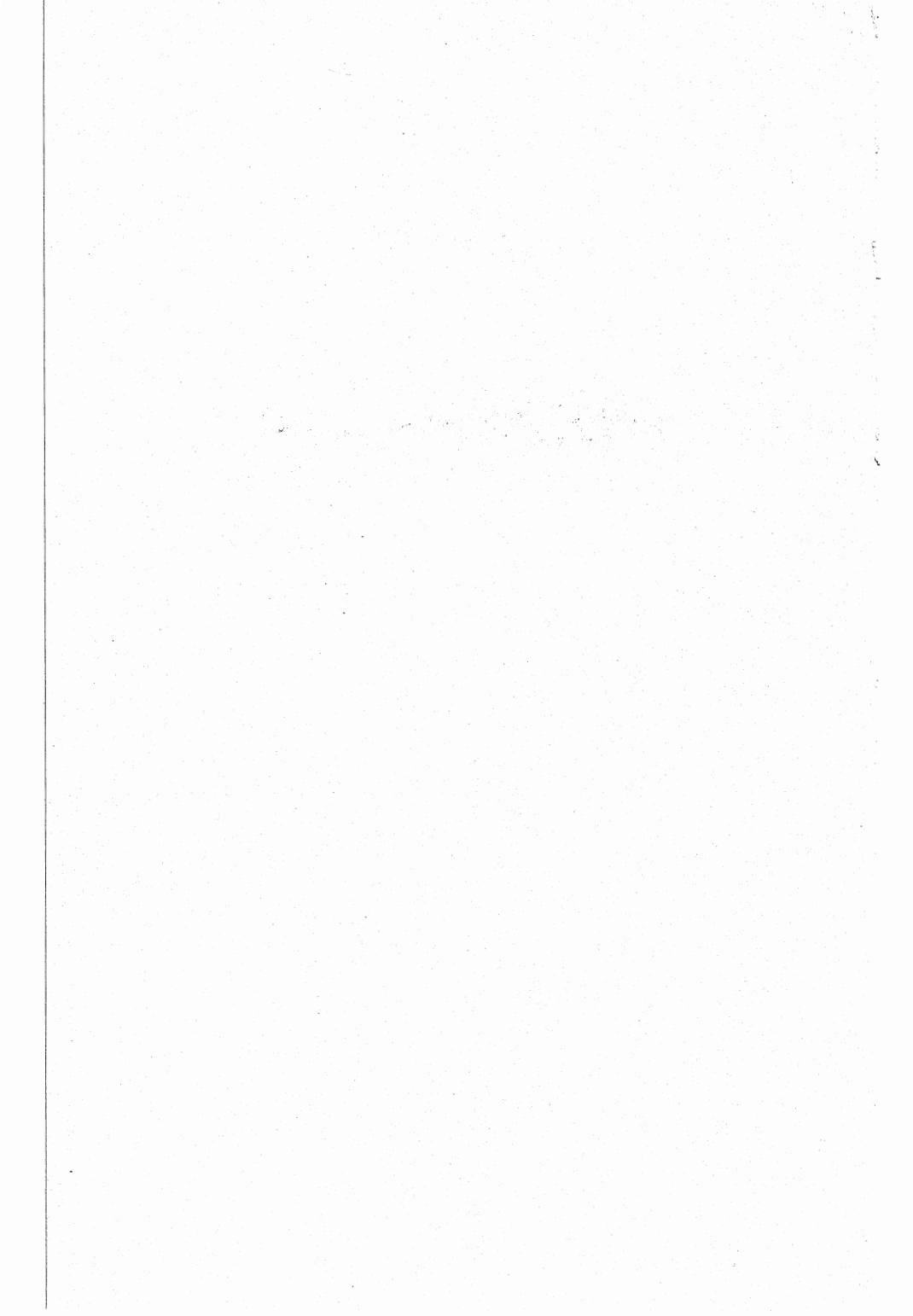
DĀR AS-SUNNAH CLASSIC COLLECTION

## SINCERE COUNSEL TO THE SEEKERS OF SACRED KNOWLEDGE

Ibn al-Jawzī (d. 597 AH)

دار السنة

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ



al-Hāfiz

Abū'l-Faraj ibn al-Jawzī [d. 597AH]

---

SINCERE COUNSEL to  
the STUDENTS of  
SACRED KNOWLEDGE

being a translation of his '*Laft al-Kabid ila Nasiba al-  
Walad*'

---



---

Every breath we take is taking us closer to death. The time we spend in this world is short, the time we are held in our graves is long, and the punishment for following our lowly desires is calamitous.

IBN AL-JAWZĪ [D. 597AH]

---

# Sincere Counsel to the Students of Sacred Knowledge

al-Hāfiz Abū'l-Faraj ibn al-Jawzī

An advice to his son

Abū'l-Qāsim Badr al-Dīn 'Alī

Explained, with critical notes by Ashraf ibn 'Abd al-Maqsūd

Translation by Aymān ibn Khālid

Edited by Abū Rumaysah



Dār as-Sunnah Publishers  
B I R M I N G H A M

First Published in Great Britain in July 2011 / Shaban 1432H  
by Dār as-Sunnah Publishers



DĀR AS-SUNNAH PUBLISHERS

P.O. Box 9818, Birmingham, B11 4WA, United Kingdom

W: [www.darassunnah.com](http://www.darassunnah.com)

E: [info@darassunnah.com](mailto:info@darassunnah.com)

E: [daar-us-sunnah@mail.com](mailto:daar-us-sunnah@mail.com)

© Copyright 2011 by Dār as-Sunnah Publishers

All rights reserved Worldwide. No part of this publication may be reproduced including the cover design, utilized or transformed in any form or means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording of any information storage and retrieval system, now known or to be invented without the express permission in writing from the publisher, nor be otherwise circulated in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

British Library Cataloguing in publication Data.

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

Title: Sincere Counsel to the Students of Sacred Knowledge  
by al-Ḥāfiẓ Abū'l-Faraj ibn al-Jawzī [d. 597AH]

Explained, with critical notes by Ashraf ibn 'Abd al-Maqṣūd

Translation by Aymān ibn Khālid

ISBN 1-904336-33-7

Paper-back

First Edition 1432 AH/2011CE

Typeset by: Dār as-Sunnah Publishers

While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book neither the authors, translators, nor Dār us-Sunnah Publishers, shall have any liability with respect to any loss or damages caused nor do the views expressed in this book are necessarily held by the publisher directly or indirectly by the instructions or advice contained in this book.

## CONTENT

Transliteration table.....	11
Acknowledgment.....	12
Preface.....	13
Methodology of Verification and Examination.....	18

### BIOGRAPHY OF THE AUTHOR

al-Imām and al-Hāfiẓ Abū'l-Faraj ibn al-Jawzī.....	20
His Name and Lineage.....	20
His Birth and Upbringing.....	20
His Teachers.....	21
His Students.....	22
His Children.....	22
His Uniqueness as a preacher.....	23
His Works and Effects.....	24
His Death.....	25

### BIOGRAPHY OF THE SON

Abū'l-Qāsim Badr al-Dīn 'Alī ibn al-Jawzī.....	26
--	----



Name, Lineage and Birth.....	26
Studies and Students.....	26
Upbringing and Life with his Father ibn al-Jawzi.....	27
His Death.....	32

Notification.....	33
-------------------	----

#### AUTHOR'S PREFACE

The Reason Behind Writing this Exhortation.....	35
---	----

#### CHAPTER ONE

Encouragement and Intimidation Prior to this Beneficial Exhortation.....	38
---	----

#### CHAPTER TWO

Obligatory Deeds, Virtuous Voluntary Deeds and High Motivation.....	40
--	----

#### CHAPTER THREE

Fear Allah and He Shall Teach You.....	43
--	----

#### CHAPTER FOUR

Benefiting from Time and Opportunities.....	48
---	----

#### CHAPTER FIVE

What Can this Eternal Life be Bought With?.....	54
---	----

#### CHAPTER SIX

Awakening After Heedlessness.....	56
-----------------------------------	----

CHAPTER SEVEN

Methodology of Cultivation by Day and Night.....59

CHAPTER EIGHT

Sacred Knowledge Supersedes all Voluntary  
Actions.....64

CHAPTER NINE

Beware of Pitfalls and Obstacles.....67

CHAPTER TEN

Self Sufficiency.....70

CHAPTER ELEVEN

Real Fear of Allāh Results to All Good.....72

CHAPTER TWELVE

The Lives of Our Pious Predecessors.....76

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

Memorization is Your Actual Capital.....78

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

Knowledge and Action are Intertwined.....80

CHAPTER FIFTEEN

Some Excellent Books to Read.....82

CHAPTER SIXTEEN

The Characteristics of a Beneficial Preacher.....84

CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

Fulfilling the Rights of Others.....86

CHAPTER EIGHTEEN

A Beautiful Closure.....88

THE ARABIC TEXT .....91

APPENDIX: PERSONS CITED IN THE TEXT.....146

INDEX OF ARABIC WORDS.....157-160

# Transliteration Table

## *Consonants. Arabic*

initial: unexpressed medial and final:

ء'	د d	ض ḍ	ك k
ب b	ذ dh	ط ṭ	ل l
ت t	ر r	ظ ḏ	م m
ث th	ز z	ع 'c'	ن n
ج j	س s	غ gh	ه h
ح ḥ	ش sh	ف f	و w
خ kh	ص ṣ	ق q	ي y

## *Vowels, diphthongs, etc.*

Short:            اَ a      اِ i      اُ u

long:            اَـ ā      اِـ ī      اِـ ū

diphthongs:            اَوِ aw

                                  اِـي ay

## Acknowledgment

All praise is due to Allāh with Whose grace all good deeds are realized and the Ṣalāh and Salām of Allāh be upon His Messenger, his family, his companions and all his loyal followers.

It has been reported by Abū Hurayrah (*radīy Allāhu ‘anhu*) that the Prophet (ﷺ) said:

“He who does not thank the people does not thank Allāh .”

[Sunan Abū Dāwūd, 4793]

Hence, I would like to extend my thanks to the team members of “Barakah House” for their outstanding endeavors and participation in translating and proofreading this book.

Translator  
Aymān ibn Khālid

## Preface

All praise is due to Allāh; we praise Him, we seek His aid, we seek forgiveness His forgiveness and we ask Him to guide us. We take refuge in Him from the evil of our ourselves and from our evil deeds. Whoever Allāh guides, none can lead astray and whoever He misguides, none can guide. I bear witness that there is no true deity save Allāh with no associate and that Muḥammad is His slave and messenger.

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا اتَّقُوا اللَّهَ حَقَّ تَقَاتِهِ وَلَا تَمُوتُنَّ إِلَّا وَأَنتُمْ  
مُسْلِمُونَ ﴿١٠٢﴾

O you who have believed, fear Allāh as He should be feared and do not die except as Muslims [in submission to Him].

[*Āli Imrān* : 102].

يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ اتَّقُوا رَبَّكُمُ الَّذِي خَلَقَكُمْ مِنْ نَفْسٍ وَجِدَةٍ وَخَلَقَ مِنْهَا  
زَوْجَهَا وَبَثَّ مِنْهُمَا رِجَالًا كَثِيرًا وَنِسَاءً وَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ الَّذِي تَسَاءَلُونَ  
بِهِ وَالْأَرْحَامَ إِنَّ اللَّهَ كَانَ عَلَيْكُمْ رَقِيبًا ﴿١٠١﴾

O mankind, fear your Lord, who created you from one

soul and created from it its mate and dispersed from both of them many men and women. And fear Allāh through whom you ask one another, and the wombs. Indeed Allāh is ever, over you, an Observer.

[*An-Nisā'* : 1]

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا اتَّقُوا اللَّهَ وَقُولُوا قَوْلًا سَدِيدًا ﴿٧١﴾ يُصْلِحْ  
لَكُمْ أَعْمَالَكُمْ وَيَغْفِرْ لَكُمْ ذُنُوبَكُمْ وَمَنْ يُطِيعِ اللَّهَ وَرَسُولَهُ  
فَقَدْ فَازَ فَوْزًا عَظِيمًا ﴿٧١﴾

O you who have believed, fear Allāh and speak words of appropriate justice. He will [then] amend for you your deeds and forgive you your sins. And whoever obeys Allah and His Messenger has certainly attained a great attainment.

[*Al-Aḥzab*: 70-71]

The most veracious discourse is the book of (Qur'ān) and the best of all guidance is the guidance of Muḥammad (ﷺ). The worst of affairs are the heresies (those new things which are introduced into the religion), every heresy is an innovation and every innovation is misguidance and all misguidance is in the Fire.

Allāh says in His perfected revelation:

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا قُوا أَنْفُسَكُمْ وَأَهْلِيكُمْ  
نَارًا وَقُودُهَا النَّاسُ وَالْحِجَارَةُ عَلَيْهَا مَلَائِكَةٌ غِلَاظٌ شِدَادٌ

O you who have believed, protect yourselves and your families from a Fire whose fuel is people and stones, over which are [appointed] angels, harsh and severe.

[*Al-Tabrīm* : 6].

The commander of the believers, 'Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib (*radīy Allāhu 'anhu*), said: "Teach yourselves and your families all that is good."<sup>1</sup>

Teaching the good to ourselves and our families is one of the most important pillars that would form the foundation upon which early Islamic society was structured. The Muslim nation today cannot prosper without it as it will only be rectified by that which rectified its early part. After all, the pillars of these teachings were set up by the teacher of humanity, sent by Allāh as a mercy for the worlds, the teacher of good to the people, Muḥammad, the messenger of Allāh (ﷺ).

Just look how he warns his beloved daughter Fāṭima, the first to follow him after his death: "O Fāṭima, daughter of Muḥammad! Save yourself from the Fire, for I cannot protect you from Allah at all."<sup>2</sup>

The following blessed admonishment that gathers all good in it shines forth brightly when he gives it to his cousin 'Abdullāh ibn 'Abbās (*radīy Allāhu 'anhumā*) the day he was riding behind him: "O Boy - or little boy -, shall I not teach you some words that Allāh will make beneficial for you?" I said, "Please do so!" He said, "Safeguard Allāh and He will safeguard you. Safeguard Allāh and you will find Him in front of you. Be conscious of Allāh at times of ease and He shall look after you when times are hard.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ṣaḥīḥ report: al-Hākim (4/494), al-Khaṭīb in *al-Faḡīḥ wa'l-Mutaḡaḡqīḥ* (1/47), al-Sam'ānī in *Adab al-Umalā' wa'l-Istīmlā'*, p. 2.

Al-Hākim commented on this report: "Ṣaḥīḥ, fulfilling the conditions of al-Bukhārī and Muslim though they did not relate it", and this is the case.

<sup>2</sup> Ṣaḥīḥ Muslim: Book of *Īmān*, Chapter: His saying, "*And warn your close relatives*", (204, 348), from Abū Hurayrah.



When you ask, ask Allāh, and when you seek aid, turn to Allāh. The pen has dried having written all that is to be. Should each and every created being try to harm you in a way that Allāh has not written for you, they will not be able to do so. Know that patience in the face of disliked things contains great good, victory comes with patience, relief follows hardship and difficulty and ease go hand in hand.”<sup>3</sup>

From this wonderful admonishment Ibn ‘Abbās (*radīy Allāhu ‘anhumā*) benefited greatly, becoming the great Imām that he was: the scholar of his time, the interpreter of the Qur’ān and the cultivator of our nation.

As for today, we are about to read the splendid admonishment of an Imām whose name is well known to all and who rightly deserves to be called the preacher of horizons and the pride of Iraq. Many indeed are the eyes that have shed tears after reading it, the hearts it has softened and great indeed is the benefit it contains. Through it the heedless wakes up, the ignorant comes to know and the sinner decides to repent. How excellent is his speech and oratory! He is the one who says: “Be merciful to a tear that is dropping for what it missed from you, and a heart burning due to your farness from it. My God, my God! My knowledge of Your grace makes me avid for You, my certainty of Your Ascendancy [i.e. violent punishment] makes me lose hope of You, and every time I lift the veil of yearning to Your presence, my shyness of You does not allow me. My God! To You and by You I humble myself, and towards You I direct.”

May Allāh have mercy on Ibn al-Jawzī, be pleased with him and

---

<sup>3</sup> Ṣaḥīḥ: See p. 25 for more details.

gather us all as members of the saved and victorious group.<sup>4</sup>

Glory be to You, O Allāh, and You we praise. I bear witness that there is no God worthy of worship except You, seeking Your forgiveness and repenting to You.

Ashraf 'Abd al-Maqṣūd  
Isma'iliyya,  
Friday 26<sup>th</sup> Ṣafar, 1409 A.H.

---

<sup>4</sup> May Allāh guide me and you as we read the following words of al-Hāfiẓ Ibn al-Jawzī in *Said al-Khāṭir*, p. 236 and contemplate on how he was: 'I sat down one day and looked around me, saw more than 10 000 people, emotions were high and some were shedding tears. I thought to myself: 'How will you be if they achieve salvation and you don't?' This made me cry out: 'My Lord and deity! Should You sentence me to be punished tomorrow, do not let them know of this! I ask this not for me but in order for them not to doubt Your grace and say: 'Does He punish someone who calls to Him?'" cf. Ibn Rajab, *Lāta'if al-Ma'ārif*, p. 171 for more information.

## Methodology of Verification and Examination

In this edition of the book I have done the following:

1. Referencing the Qur'ānic verses.
2. Referencing each ḥadīth attributed to the Prophet (ﷺ) and mentioning its level of authenticity. If a ḥadīth can be found in one or both of Bukharī and Muslim, I have sufficed with attributing the ḥadīth to them as this automatically indicates that the ḥadīth is authentic. This is also the methodology of al-Ḥāfiẓ al-'Irāqī in his critical ḥadīth analysis of *Iḥyā' 'Ulūm al-Dīn*. These notes are brief in order to ensure that the reader doesn't get distracted from the actual content of the book.
3. Including biographies of the famous people mentioned in the book and mentioned some of their life-conditions.
4. Adding a heading for each section of the book as appropriate.
5. Commenting on some parts of the text as needed. These comments revolve around asceticism, academic notes, and details of fine conduct.
6. Adding the vocals for the ḥadīths, other reports and poetry

mentioned in the book as well as some individual words that occur in it.<sup>5</sup> The copy I have relied on was printed by al-Matba'a al-Salafiyya in Cairo. This book has been printed numerous times. al-Matba'a al-Sunna al-Muhammadiyya has done so with the verification work done by Sh. Hāmid al-Fata, may Allāh have mercy on him, and this print can be found in the *Min Dafā'im al-Kunūz* collection. We also have the al-Matba'a al-Salafiyya, Cairo print, which was worked on by Sh. Muhibb al-Din al-Khaṭīb, may Allāh have mercy on him, the Maktaba Hamidu, Alexandria print with the verification work done by Dr. Fu'ād 'Abd al-Mun'im Aḥmad. There is also the print of al-Maktaba al-Islāmi with the verification of Dr. Mirwān al-Qabbānī, among others.

---

<sup>5</sup> Al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabi said in *al-Sīyar*, 21/375 that this text is a part of some other text..

## THE BIOGRAPHY OF THE AUTHOR

# al-Hāfiẓ Abū'l-Faraj 'Abdu'l-Raḥmān Ibn Jawzī

### His Name and Lineage

He is Abū'l-Faraj Jāmal al-Dīn 'Abdu'l-Raḥmān ibn 'Alī ibn Muḥammad ibn 'Alī Ibn 'Ubayd Allāh Ibn al-Jawzī al-Qurashī al-Tamimi al-Bakrī from the family of Muḥammad ibn Abū Bakr *al-Ṣiddīq*, al-Baghdādī al-Ḥanbalī.<sup>6</sup>

### His Birth and Upbringing

He was born in 509 or 510 A.H. Upon reaching adolescence, his aunt took him to Ibn Nāṣir from whom he learned a great deal. He came to love preaching while barely having reached the age of puberty, and from then started to give sermons to the people.

---

<sup>6</sup> *Ṭhail al-Rawḍatain*, p.21, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, p. 13/26.

His father passed away when he was three years old so his aunt took care of him. His relatives were copper merchants so at times in hadīth hearings he would write his name as 'Abdu'l-Raḥmān ibn 'Alī al-Ṣaffār [i.e. The Coppersmith].

His first ḥadīth hearing was in 156 A.H., as cited by al-Dhahabī<sup>7</sup>

While still very young he became known as a religious person who would not socialise with anyone and would not eat from any food whose source was doubtful. He would only leave his house for prayer and he would not play with other kids. He was a person of very great determination and ambition and he spent all his life busy in seeking knowledge, preaching and authoring.<sup>8</sup>

## His Teachers

Al-Ḥāfiẓ Ibn al-Jawzī has already introduced his teachers in his book *Mashyakhat Ibn al-Jawzī* [i.e. the scholars who taught Ibn al-Jawzī] where he listed many of them. In the field of ḥadīth he benefitted from accompanying Ibn Nāṣir, in Qur'ān and Adab [i.e. Manners] from Sibṭ al-Khiyāt and Ibn al-Jawālīqī. He was the last to narrate from al-Dinawari and al-Mutawakkili.<sup>9</sup>

## His Students

Those who narrated from him include his son and companion,

---

<sup>7</sup> *Thaīl al-Rawdataīn*, 21, *Thaīl 'ala Ṭabaqāt al-Ḥanabila*, 1/401, *Shathbarāt al-Thahab*, 4/330.

<sup>8</sup> *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 13/29, *Said al-Khāṭir*, 238.

<sup>9</sup> *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 21/366, 367.

the great scholar Muḥyī al-Dīn Yūsuf who was a teacher in the institute of al-Musta‘sim billāh, his oldest son ‘Alī al-Nāsikh, his grandson, the preacher Shams al-Dīn Yūsuf ibn Farghalī al-Hanafī the author of *Mir‘āt al-Zamān* (Mirror of Time), al-Ḥāfiz ‘Abd al-Ghanī, Shaykh Muwaffaq al-Dīn Ibn Qudāma, Ibn al-Dubaythī, Ibn al-Nājjar and al-Diyā.<sup>10</sup>

## His Children

His grandson Abū al-Muzfir and majority of those who wrote his biography say that he had three sons:

1. The oldest of them, Abū Bakr ‘Abd al-‘Azīz: He became a jurist in the school of Aḥmad and took knowledge from Abū al-Waqt, Ibn Nāṣir, al-Armawī and a group of his father's teachers. He traveled to the city of al-Musul where he preached and held sermons there for which he earned the people full acceptance. It is said that the family of al-Zahrazurī used to be jealous of him so they made someone put poison in his drink which caused him to die in al-Mūsul in 554 A.H. during the lifetime of his father.<sup>11</sup>
2. Abū al-Qāsim Badr al-Dīn ‘Alī al-Nāsikh: A separate biography of him will follow. He is the one his father is addressing in this book.
3. Abū Muḥammad Yūsuf Muḥyī al-Dīn<sup>12</sup>: He was the most

<sup>10</sup> *Siyar al-A‘lām al-Nubulā*, #21, 367.

<sup>11</sup> *Thaīl Tabaqāt al-Ḥanabila*, 1/430, 431.

<sup>12</sup> cf. *Siyar al-A‘lām al-Nubulā*, 23/372, *al-Ibar*, 5/237, *Dīwal al-Islām*, 2/122, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 13/203, *Thaīl Tabaqāt al-Ḥanabila*, 2/258-261, *al-Uṣjud al-Masbūk*, 635, *Shatharāt al-Thabab*, 5/286287, Ibn Shaṭṭī: *Mukhtasar Tabaqāt al-Ḥanabila*, p.57.

intelligent and youngest son as he was born in 580 A.H. He became involved in preaching and held sermons after his father, in which he excelled and by which he was looked up to by his confreres. He then was appointed to control and supervise markets of Baghdād, and after that he was assigned to deliver the messages of the caliphs to kings of other different regions peculiarly to the Ayyūbī family in the Shām region. He held the position of teacher in the institute of caliph al-Mustā'ṣim in 640 A.H. till he was killed in prison in 656 A.H. by Hulaku who occupied Bagdād and destroyed it. His three sons Jāmal al-Dīn, Sharaf al-Dīn and Tāj al-Dīn were killed with him. He has authored many works, including *Mā'adin al-Abrīẓ fi Tafsīr al-Kitāb al-'Aẓīẓ* and *al-Madhab al-Aḥmad fi Madhab Aḥmad*. Unlike his brother Abu al-Qāsim, he was a dutiful son who honored his father and treated him well.

His grandson mentioned that Ibn al-Jawzī had many daughters; Rabi'a, Sharaf al-Nisā', Zainab, Jauhara, Sitt al-'Ulama al-Sughra and Sitt al-'Ulama al-Kubrā.<sup>13</sup>

### His Uniqueness as a Preacher

Excellent indeed are the words of al-Hāfiẓ al-Dhahabī about him: 'He was the leading figure in reminding the people and had no equal. He would recite pleasant poetry and eloquent prose spontaneously and his fine words and moving speech was abundant. There has never been anyone like him, not before him and not after him. He is the carrier of the flag of exhortation in its various forms. He had a pleasant appearance and a good voice and his

---

<sup>13</sup> *Mir'at al-Zamān*, 8/503, Abū Shamma: *Thail al-Raudatain*, 26.



talks had an impact on peoples' hearts. His lifestyle in general was beautiful.<sup>14</sup> He also said: 'I believe there will not be another one like him.'<sup>15</sup>

Al-Ḥāfiẓ Ibn Rajab said: 'So we conclude that his gatherings of exhortation were one of a kind and nobody had heard of anything like them. They were gatherings of great benefit where the heedless would be reminded, the ignorant would come to know, the sinners would repent and the polytheists would become Muslims.'<sup>16</sup>

### His Works and Effects

Shaikh al-Islām Ibn Taymiyyah said in *al-Ajwiba al-Miṣriyyah*: 'Shaikh Abū'l-Faraj excelled in many sciences and has many writings to his account. He would write on many topics, and as I counted his works I found them to be over one thousand in number. Afterwards, I found out about other works as well.'<sup>17</sup>

Having mentioned some of his books, al-Dhahabī said: 'I don't know of a scholar who has written what this man has.'<sup>18</sup>

The virtuous teacher 'Abd al-Ḥamīd al-'Alūjī has written a book on his works which was printed in Baghdād in 1965. In this piece

<sup>14</sup> *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 21/367.

<sup>15</sup> *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 21/384.

<sup>16</sup> *Tha'īl Tabaqāt al-Ḥanabila*, 1/410.

<sup>17</sup> *Tha'īl Tabaqāt al-Ḥanabila*, 1/415, *al-Tāj al-Mukallal*, #70.

<sup>18</sup> *Tathkirat al-Ḥuffāẓ*, 1344.

he researched their titles, their copies and copies that had been printed and put them in alphabetic order. Whoever wishes to know about these books should refer to this work, keeping in mind that many of the manuscripts mentioned therein by al-'Alūji have now been printed.

### His Death

Ibn al-Jawzī passed away on Friday the 12th of Ramaḍān in 597 A.H and was buried at Bāb Ḥarb.<sup>19</sup>

---

<sup>19</sup> For a more detailed biography of al-Ḥāfiẓ Ibn al-Jawzī, refer to: Ibn Athir's *al-Kamil*, 12/71, Sibṭ Ibn al-Jawzī: *Mir'āt al-Zamān*, 8/481, al-Mundhirī: *al-Takmila*, Biography #608, al-Bāgghal: *al-Masbyakha*, #140, Abū Shāmma: *Thaib al-Raḍatain*, #21, Ibn al-Sā'i: *al-Jāmi'*, 9/65, Ibn Khalkān: *al-Wafayāt*, 3/140, al-Dhahabī: *al-'Ibar*, 4/297, *Dūwal al-Islām*, 2/79, *Tathkirat al-Ḥuffāẓ*, 4/1342, *Siyar al-'Alām al-Nubulā'*, 21/365, Ibn Kathīr: *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 13/26, Ibn Rajab: *Thaib Tabaqāt al-Ḥanabila*, 1/399, al-Jazari: *Ghāyat wa'l-Nihāyah*, 1/375, Ṣiddīq Ḥasan Khan: *al-Tāj al-Mukallal*, #70, Ibn Shattī: *Mukhtasar Tabaqāt al-Ḥanabila*, p. 42.

## THE BIOGRAPHY OF THE SON

# Abū'l-Qāsim Badr al-Dīn 'Alī ibn al-Jawzī

### Name, Lineage and Birth

He is Badr al-Dīn Abū'l-Qāsim 'Alī, the son of the Shaikh and Imām Abū'l-Faraj 'Abdu'l-Raḥmān ibn 'Alī ibn Muḥammad ibn 'Alī ibn al-Jawzī al-Bakrī, al-Baghdādī al-Nāsikh.

He was born in Ramaḍān in 551 A.H.<sup>20</sup> which was approximately 30 years before the birth of his brother Yūsuf Muḥyi al-Dīn.

### Studies and Students

He studied under Abū'l-Faraj al-Baṭṭī, Yahya ibn Thābit, Abū Zur'a, Aḥmad ibn al-Muqarrab, minister ibn Hubaira and Shuhda.

Al-Sayf narrated from him as well as 'Izz al-Dīn 'Abdu'l-Raḥmān ibn Muḥammad ibn 'Abd al-Ghanī al-Maqdisī, al-Taḥī ibn al-Wāsīti,

---

<sup>20</sup> *Sīyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 22/352.

al-Kāmal 'Alī ibn al-Waḍḍāh, Abū'l-Faraj ibn al-Zain, Abū al-'Abbās al-Fārūthī, Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad ibn Hubaira the resident of Bilbeis. He gave permission to Abū Naṣr ibn al-Shirāzī and al-Qādī the Ḥanbalī to narrate from him.

Ibn Nuqṭa said: 'He relates with accuracy, is trustworthy, has memorized a lot and presents his ḥadīth in a fine manner. He heard the Saḥih of al-Ismā'īl from Yaḥya ibn Thabit.'<sup>21</sup>

### Upbringing and Life with his Father al-Imām ibn al-Jawzī

One may ask why Ibn al-Jawzī chose to advice this son of his, and the answer can be easily found by looking into their life together. The author says in the preface that having found his son somewhat careless about seeking knowledge, he decided to write some words of encouragement to him to get him motivated. The scholars' comments about him give us the following picture of Abū'l-Qāsim's life with his father; al-Imām Ibn al-Jawzī:

He was a good child from the very beginning to the point that Ibn al-Najjār said: 'He preached and gave sermons when he was a child.'<sup>22</sup> Al-Dhahabī said: 'He preached for some time and then quit. He was extraordinarily eloquent in much of his speech and pleasant in his jesting.'<sup>23</sup> This indicates that his upbringing and early childhood were like those of his father and his brother Muḥyī al-Dīn Yūsuf.

---

<sup>21</sup> *Siyar al-A'lam al-Nubulā'*, 22/353.

<sup>22</sup> *Siyar al-A'lam al-Nubulā'*, 22/353.

<sup>23</sup> *Siyar al-A'lam al-Nubulā'*, 22/352.

However, at some point before the birth of his brother Muḥyī al-Dīn Yūsuf in 580 A.H., he began to spend his days in idle play, leaving his previous activities as a preacher and wasting his time doing impermissible things. This is verified by al-Hāfiẓ Ibn al-Jawzī himself in this advice as he says: ‘Out of my sons only Abū’l-Qāsim is left, so I have asked Allāh to make him a pious successor and an ideal son who shall achieve success. However, I found him somewhat careless of studying Sacred Knowledge so I decided to write these words to him.’

He gave this excellent and also obligatory advice to his only son at the time, following the words of Allāh?:

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا قُوا أَنفُسَكُمْ وَأَهْلِيكُمْ

O Believers! Protect yourselves and your families from fire...

[*Sūrah at-Tabrīm* : 6]

Still, despite his efforts, it seems that his son did not take heed of his words which caused his father to abandon him and cut all relations between them. Some of the things that made him go to this extent were his son’s habit of engaging in impermissible activities and having friends who were busy with idle play and corrupt lifestyle. He had become a person inclined towards amusement and moral depravity.

Ibn al-Najjār said: ‘He was very much inclined towards amusement and dissipation, so he left preaching, became involved in impermissible affairs and kept corrupt company.’<sup>24</sup>

<sup>24</sup> *Sīyar al-A‘lām al-Nubulā*, 22/353.

The reader can perceive this as the text goes on and also see how the author forbids his son from doing these things.

We are now speaking of the life of a son with a father who was praised by al-Hāfiẓ al-Dhahabī in his words: 'I do not think time will allow another one like him to appear.' Therefore, it is especially sad to know how this son mistreated his father who in his advice obviously fears that his son will be cast into the Fire and the punishment of Hell. You see him fearing for his son lest he abandons something that is virtuous and good and yet still he continued to disrespect and mistreat him. So far he went that during the trial of his father, the times of trial in general and other times, he was harboring enmity towards him. Then, having got a hold of his books in Wasit he sold them for a pathetic price. This was related by Ibn al-Jawzī's grandson Abū al-Muzafir from his grandfather: 'Of sons he left behind 'Alī, and he is the one who took his father's books and sold them for a slave-price unless somebody wanted to pay more. When his father was coming to Wasit he made his way to the books at night, took what he wanted and sold them for cheaper than the ink they were written in. His father had abandoned him years ago, so when he was tried he only showed enmity towards him.'<sup>25</sup>

Ibn al-Najjār said: 'I heard his father say: "Truly, I make *du'ā* against him every night before Fajr.'<sup>26</sup>

Al-Dhahabī pointed this out as well, saying: 'He would disre-

---

<sup>25</sup> *Mir'āt al-Zamān*, 8/502-503, *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 21/384.

<sup>26</sup> *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 22/353.

spect his father and has also been told to have profited from his books.<sup>27</sup>

Later on, Allāh compensated al-Ḥāfiẓ ibn al-Jawzī with a dear companion and a dutiful son, the great scholar and teacher in the Caliph's region, Yūsuf Muḥyī al-Dīn.

Ibn al-Sibā'ī said of him, 'He is a virtuous scholar and a great, exemplary person. One of the great personalities in the field of Sacred Knowledge and famous for his virtues. The divine providence appeared on him from the very beginning of his childhood, so his father took care of him, teaching him Hadith and training him to deliver sermons ever since he was a child. He was given much good in the field and received complete acceptance from the people and the signs of grace in him were evident.'<sup>28</sup>

This dutiful son, who from his young age worked in preaching, was also the reason why ibn al-Jawzī was saved when a calamity befell him in the late part of his life when some people slandered him before the Caliph al-Nāṣir. His loyal student, though still a youth, pleaded the Caliph's mother to help his teacher and spiritual father so she interceded with the Caliph who then released the Shaikh. His loyal student; Yūsuf then came and took him away.<sup>29</sup>

When al-Ḥāfiẓ ibn al-Jawzi was 80 years old he would study Sacred Knowledge together with him and did not return from

---

<sup>27</sup> *Siyar al-A'lam al-Nubulā'*, 22/352.

<sup>28</sup> *Thail Tabaqāt al-Ḥanabila*, 2/258, 259.

<sup>29</sup> *Siyar al-A'lam al-Nubulā'*, 21/377.

Wasit until he and his student completed reciting the Qur'ān in the ten ways in the presence of Ibn al-Baqillānī.<sup>30</sup>

The Shaikh loved his loyal student Yūsuf very much to the level it is said that he has said: 'When I was in Wāsīt I completed the Qur'ān every day, but I did not read Sūrah Yūsuf due to my sadness of us being apart.'<sup>31</sup> He also authored a book of his sermons called *al-Majālis al-Yūsufiyya*.<sup>32</sup>

At this point, it is fitting to mention some of the good sides of ibn al-Jawzī's undutiful son as well even though he did not take heed of the advice while his brother Yūsuf benefitted from it.

Al-Dhahabī said in his biography of Abū'l-Qāsim 'Alī: 'The virtuous and reliable shaikh...He was extraordinarily eloquent and knew the art of jesting...He was abstinent, serving his own self.'

Ibn Kathīr said: 'He was a gentle and fine shaikh.'<sup>33</sup>

Ibn al-Najjār said he used to write ten fascicles every day.

It is agreed that he prayed the funeral prayer for his father, as mentioned by ibn al-Jawzī's grandson.

So we ask Allāh All-Mighty to have guided this son to repent

---

<sup>30</sup> *Thail Tabaqāt al-Hanabila*, 1/427.

<sup>31</sup> Ibn Shattī: *Mukhtasar Tabaqāt al-Hanabila*, p.46.

<sup>32</sup> *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 13/136.

<sup>33</sup> *Siyar al-A'lam al-Nubulā'*, 22/3, Ibn Kathīr: wafayat sana 630 AH - *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*.



before his death from that which occurred between him and his father, the Imam, the scholar, the preacher of horizons, Shaikh al-Islam and pride of 'Irāq, Jāmal al-Dīn Abū'l-Faraj 'Abdu'l-Rahmān ibn al-Jawzī. May Allāh have mercy on him, be pleased with his deeds and make him settled next to Him.

## Death

Abū'l-Qāsim 'Alī died in the last days of Ramaḍān in 630 AH.<sup>34</sup>

---

<sup>34</sup> *Thaib Tabaqāt al-Hanabila*, 2/260.

## Notification

The following is written on the cover of the *al-Sunna al-Muḥammadiyya* print which is included in the *Min Dāfai'in al-Kunūz* collection and edited by Shaikh Muḥammad Ḥāmid al-Faqī as well as the cover of the *al-Matba'a al-Salafiyya*, Cairo print, which was printed with the work of Shaikh Muḥibb al-Dīn al-Khaṭīb:

'He gave this advice to his son whose kunya was Abū'l-Qāsim, born in 580 A.H. and killed in the battle of the Tatar in Baghdād in 656 A.H..'

It preceded, however, that the one killed in the battle of the Tatar along with his three sons was Yūsuf Muḥyī al-Dīn. Al-Ḥāfiẓ Ibn Rajab says: 'His happiness was sealed with martyrdom, may Allāh be pleased with him. Shaikh 'Abd al-Ṣamad ibn Abū al-Jaysh said: 'It was conveyed to me that Shaikh Muḥammad ibn Sakrān, the famous abandoner of vanities, said: 'I saw the teacher of the regime Ibn al-Jawzī in my dream and said to him: 'What did Allāh do with you?' to which he replied: 'Their swords compensated for our sins.' May Allāh be pleased with him.'<sup>35</sup> Abū'l-Qāsim 'Alī died

---

<sup>35</sup> For more detail on the biography of Abū'l-Qāsim 'Alī, the son of the Shaikh and Imām Abū'l-Faraj Ibn al-Jawzī, refer to: Sibṭ ibn al-Jawzī: *Mir'at al-Zamān*,

in 630 A.H. in Ramaḍān and the one who was really killed in the battle of the Tatar was his brother Yūsuf Muḥyī al-Dīn, and this error should be noted.

---

=  
8/678, 679. al-Munthirī: *al-Takmilah*, 3/Biography 2489, al-Hāfiẓ al-Dhahabī: *al-Ibar*, 5/120, *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 22/352, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 13/136, *Shatharāt al-Thahab*, 5/137.

## AUTHOR'S PREFACE

# The Reason Behind Writing this Exhortation

**I**N THE NAME OF ALLĀH, the All-Merciful, the Most Merciful. It is His aid that we seek.

All praise be to Allāh who produced our forefather from dirt and brought out his offspring from between the ribs and the backbone. Praise be to Him who made kinship and lineage a support for kinsfolk, blessed me with knowledge and the understanding of what is correct, cultivated me well as a child, protected me in my youth and gave me offspring who will hopefully be a reason for abundant rewards.

رَبِّ اجْعَلْنِي مُقِيمَ الصَّلَاةِ وَمِنْ ذُرِّيَّتِي رَبَّنَا وَتَقَبَّلْ  
دُعَاءَنَا ﴿٤١﴾ رَبَّنَا اغْفِرْ لِي وَلِوَالِدَيَّ وَلِلْمُؤْمِنِينَ يَوْمَ يَقُومُ  
الْحِسَابُ ﴿٤٢﴾

My Lord, make me an establisher of prayer, and [many] from my descendants. Our Lord, and accept my sup-

plication. Our Lord, forgive me and my parents and the believers the Day the account is established.

[*Sūrah Ibrāhīm* : 40-41]

Once I learned the virtue of marriage and having children,<sup>36</sup> I read the whole Qur'ān<sup>37</sup> and then asked Allāh, the Most High, to give me ten children. He answered my request and gave me five boys and five girls. Two of the girls and four of the boys passed away<sup>38</sup> and of the boys only Abu'l-Qāsim<sup>39</sup> remains alive. I asked

<sup>36</sup> In *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 21/375, al-Dhahabī mentions a book by Ibn al-Jawzī called *al-Ḥatth 'ala Ṭalab al-Walad*. May Allah give us a pious progeny.

<sup>37</sup> Know, may Allāh have mercy on us, that invocation after completing the Qur'ān is something our pious predecessors used to do. It was related about Anas that, "Whenever he would complete the whole Qur'ān he would gather his children and household and invoke Allāh for them." This was related by al-Darimi (3474). It was related by Ibn Abi Dāwūd with two ṣaḥīḥ chains as mentioned by the God fearing Imām al-Nawawī (*al-Atḥkār*, p. 191). Al-Ḥāfiẓ Ibn Hajr said (*Al-Futūḥat al-Rabbanīyya*, 3/344): "This is a mauquf Ṣaḥīḥ narration."

<sup>38</sup> This is problematic from two angles:

1. Al-Ḥāfiẓ Ibn al-Jawzī left two sons behind him: Yūsuf Muḥyī al-Dīn (580-656) who was killed by Hulakū when he entered Baghdad and destroyed it and Abu'l-Qāsim 'Alī (551-630) who Ibn al-Jawzī is addressing in this book.
2. Ibn al-Jawzī had more than five daughters as his grandson Abū al-Muzafir mentioned a sixth one as preceded.

The issue can be solved by looking at the times of death in this case. It seems that this was the situation at the time of his writing this book which was before his son Yūsuf Muḥyī al-Dīn was born in 580 and after his oldest son Abū Bakr 'Abdu'l-'Azīz, died in 554. It might also be that he had other children in addition to this Yūsuf of his. This also clarifies the second problem as we can assume that he had one more daughter after writing this book.

=

Allāh to make him a pious successor and an ideal son who shall achieve success. However, I found him somewhat careless in his pursuit of Sacred Knowledge and so I decided to write him these words encouraging him to take my path in studying, and to direct him towards recouring to the granter of accord, the Glorious and Most High. I acknowledge that none can abandon the one He gives success to and none can guide the one He leads astray, but Allāh, Most High, has also said:

﴿تَوَاصَوْا بِالْحَقِّ وَتَوَاصَوْا بِالصَّبْرِ﴾

And advised each other to truth and advised each other to patience.

[*Sūrah al-'Aṣr*: 3]

and

﴿فَذَكِّرْ إِن نَّفَعَتِ الذِّكْرَىٰ﴾

So remind if reminding is of benefit.

[*Sūrah al-'Alā*: 9]

All power and strength is in Allāh's hands alone, High and Mighty is He.

---

<sup>39</sup> He is Abu'l-Qāsim Badr al-Dīn 'Alī al-Nasikh. His biography has already been mentioned and we learned that he used to mistreat his father who was not pleased with his ways and finally abandoned him for years. He died in 630.

## CHAPTER ONE

# Encouragement and Intimidation Prior to This Beneficial Exhortation

**Y**OU SHOULD KNOW, my son, may Allāh guide you to what is right, that man has been distinguished by intellect only so that he would act according to it. Bring it to the fore, use it in contemplation and spend time alone with yourself. You will conclude that you are a created being who has responsibilities and obligations and that the two angels are counting your every word and glance. Every breath is a step closer to death. The time we spend in this world is short, the time we are held in our graves is long, and the punishment for following our base desires is calamitous.

Where is the delight of yesterday? It has departed leaving only regret in its wake. Where is the soul's desire? How many has it brought low, how many has it caused to slip and falter? People have only attained happiness by going against their lusts and desires. People have only become wretched by giving preference to the life of this world. Learn from the lives of kings and ascetics: where is the delight of the kings and where is the weariness of

the ascetics? The only thing left is the abundant reward and beautiful mention for the pious, and the malicious words and calamitous punishment for the disobedient. It is as if those who starved never starved and those who ate to their fill never did so. Laziness in virtuous deeds is an evil companion indeed, and love of comfort causes regret greater than any enjoyment. So take heed and tire yourself for your self.

Know, that performing the obligatory and avoiding the forbidden is a must; whenever a person transgresses the limits let him beware of the Fire. Then know that aspiring to virtuous deeds is the highest goal of those who strive yet virtuous deeds vary in status and ranks; some people consider them to mean abstaining from worldly vanities and others think they stand for dedicating oneself for worship. The truth, however, is that complete virtue is nothing but joining knowledge with action. When these two are combined they raise a person to the level of truly knowing the Creator, Exalted and Most High, causing him to love, fear and yearn for Him. This is the true goal. People also vary in determination: not everybody who wants is wanted and not everybody who seeks finds what he is looking for. Still, everyone must strive to reach their goals because “everyone is eased towards what he is created for.”<sup>40</sup>

Allāh is the source of all help.

---

<sup>40</sup> The wording of this sentence is a ṣaḥīḥ ḥadīth of the Prophet (ﷺ) from ‘Alī ibn Abī Ṭalīb (al-Bukhārī: *Kitāb al-Jana’iz*, 1362, Chapter: *Preaching by the grave while one’s companions are sitting around oneself*, 1362, Muslim: *Kitāb al-Qadr*, Chapter: *How man was created*, 2647, 6).



## CHAPTER TWO

# Obligatory Deeds, Virtuous Voluntary Deeds and High Motivation

**T**HE FIRST THING A PERSON SHOULD pay attention to is knowing Allāh, Most High, through His signs. It is obvious that anyone who sees how the sky has been raised and the earth laid out, and observes how perfectly different things - especially his own body - have been made, knows that every construction must have a maker and everything built must have a builder.

Then he should contemplate the proofs of the Messenger's (ﷺ) truthfulness. The greatest of which is the Qur'ān, which Allāh declared to be inimitable by man even if they would only attempt to compose one *Surah* like it. Once he is certain of the Creator's existence and the truthfulness of the Messenger (ﷺ), he has to submit to the Sacred Law because not submitting to the Sacred Law is indicative of corrupt belief.

After this he must know the obligatory things related to Wuḍū' (ablution), Ṣalāh (prayer), Zakāh (obligatory alms) - if he has wealth

, Ḥajj (pilgrimage) and other obligatory actions. Once he has learned the obligatory parts of these, he must implement them.

A man of high ambition and strong determination should proceed and advance to the level of virtuous voluntary actions. He ought to busy himself with memorising the Qurʾān and studying its explanation along with the ḥadīth of the Messenger (ﷺ). He should also learn about his (ﷺ) life, the life of his companions and the scholars who came after them. Let one adapt to higher ranks then advance to the highest rank.

He must also know enough Arabic grammar and commonly used language to speak properly.

Jurisprudence is the basis of all sciences, but reminding of the afterlife is the sweetest and most beneficial on a more general scale. Praise be to Allāh, for by His grace I have been able to compose some books in these fields that spare you the need of looking into the books of past scholars or any other books for that matter<sup>41</sup> This being the case, there is no need for you to search for books or to focus your efforts in authoring them. The ambition or aspiration of a person only falters or fails if it is weak and feeble; when it is lofty, you will never be satisfied with anything less.

Evidence tells you that high aspiration and determination is in man's innate nature. It is only during certain times that these are weak, and they only need to be encouraged to be strong again. When you find yourself incapable, ask The Benefactor, and when you feel indolent, turn to the Giver of opportunity. You will only

---

<sup>41</sup> Al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī said in (*Tathkirat al-Ḥuffāẓ*, 1344): "I do not know of a scholar who has written what this man has."

achieve good by obeying Him, and no good will bypass you except due to your disobedience. Have you not seen that obedient ones always reach their goals! And have you not seen that disobedient never succeed or achieve their goals! Have you not heard the poet say<sup>42</sup>:

By Allāh, never have I come to visit you  
Except that the earth compacted before me.  
I have never resolved to leave your door  
Except that I tripped over my garment's tail.

---

<sup>42</sup> *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'* (21/58), said to be poetry of al-Murtaḍā, the father of al-Imām Abū al-Faḍā' il Muḥammad ibn 'Abd Allāh ibn al-Qāsim ibn Muẓfir al-Shāfi'i with *yā lail* in the place of *Allāh*.

## CHAPTER THREE

# Fear Allāh and He Shall Teach You

**O**BSERVE, MY SON, the way you deal with the limits of Allāh and see how you can keep yourself within their bounds. Indeed, he who takes care of these limits is taken care of, and he who doesn't, is left to himself. I shall now mention some of my experiences to you so that you may observe my striving and ask the Granter of success to bless me. Truly, most of the blessings I have been given have not been earned by me but rather they are conferred as a result of the planning of The Gentle One alone.

I remember myself as a child: A highly motivated six-year old sitting in class with older boys.<sup>43</sup> The intellect I had been given

---

<sup>43</sup> Al-Ḥāfiẓ ibn al-Jawzī about his high motivation in different places of *Said al-Khāṭir* and we shall mention some of it here (238): “Never has a man been tried with anything greater than his high ambitions. This is because a person who has high ambitions will choose the highest goals and it may be that he doesn't have enough time to achieve them or his instruments are too weak so he remains in constant suffering. I have been given this ambition in some regards and suffer because of it. I am not saying that I wish it would have not been given to me, for the sweeter the life the less the intellect; and an intelligent man does not purchase additional pleasure for deficient intellect.” He also said (239):

=

superseded that of old men. I do not recall myself playing on the road with other kids or ever laughing out loud<sup>44</sup>.

When I was seven or so, I attended the gatherings in the Masjid. I would not sit in a circle of mere wordplay, but searched for a ḥadīth scholar who would narrate about the Prophet's (ﷺ) life. I would memorize everything he said, then go back home and write it down. I was blessed for being granted my teacher Abū al-Faḍl ibn Nāṣir, may Allāh bestow His Mercy upon him,<sup>45</sup> who would take me to different scholars and let me hear the *Musnad* [of Imām

=  
 "I looked at my high ambition and was amazed by it: I want to gain knowledge of things I'm sure I can never gain knowledge of because I would love to learn every single science in great detail. Truth is, however, that learning just a portion of that takes more than a lifetime." He also tells how he still had these ambitions as a grownup (250, 251): "I was given an extremely high ambition. I grew up and never achieved what I hoped for. I began asking Allāh for a long life, strong body and the achievement of my goals. The customs and habits of people renounced what I was doing and said: "No custom exists in what you seek." I replied, saying: "I only ask from One who is able to go beyond customs."

<sup>44</sup> For verification of this, refer to: Ibn Kathīr, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 13/29.

<sup>45</sup> The Imām, Muḥaddith and Ḥāfiẓ, Muḥiḍ al-'Iraq, Abu al-Faḍl Muḥammad ibn Nāṣir ibn Muḥammad ibn 'Alī ibn 'Amm al-Salāmī from Baghdād (467-551). Al-Ḥāfiẓ ibn al-Jawzi benefitted in the field of ḥadīth by accompanying this Imām as indicated by Dhahabī (*Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 21/367) and confirmed by al-Ḥāfiẓ ibn al-Jawzi himself (*al-Muntazam*, 10/163). Al-Dhahabī also related this from him (*al-Mizān*, 20/267), saying: "He said: 'Our shaikh was reliable, a man of good memory and precision. He was from Ahl al-Sunnah wa al-Jama'ah and had not faults worth mentioning. He was responsible of hearing me. I heard the *Musnad* of Aḥmad and the major books in his reading and it was he whom I took the science of ḥadīth from. He would remember Allāh a lot and was quick to shed tears.' For his biography, refer to: *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 20/265, *Tathkirat al-Huffāẓ*, 3/1289, *Manāqib Aḥmad*, 530, 531, *Mir'at al-Zamān*, 8/138, *Thail Tabaqāt al-Hanabila*, 1/225-229, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 12/233.

Aḥmad] and other major works. All this time I had no idea of why I was made to do these things. My teacher recorded all I had heard, and when I reached puberty he handed me this record. I accompanied him till his death, and through him I learned the science of ḥadīth and transmission.

The kids used to go down to Tigris River and play on the bridge, but when I was small I used to take a book and sit far from people by the shore studying Sacred Knowledge<sup>46</sup>.

Then I was inspired to abandon the vanities of this world so I began constant fasting and reduced my food intake to very little. I trained myself to be patient, embarking on a continuous pursuit in order to do so and staying up at night. I didn't feel satisfied with studying just one science<sup>47</sup> so I read jurisprudence, sermon delivery and ḥadīth and followed those who practiced *zuhd* (as-

---

<sup>46</sup> May Allāh have mercy on Ibn al-Jawzī for he was serious about his studies in both his childhood and after growing up. He dedicated himself to learning and would not allow anything of his time to be wasted. He says about himself (*Said al-Khāṭir*, 235): "During my pursuit of this quest for knowledge I would go through difficulties that, to me, were sweeter than honey due to what I was expecting to gain. When I was small I used to take some dry bread with me and go out to learn ḥadīth. I would sit by the ʿĪsa river, and as I was unable to eat the bread without washing it down with water, I took a sip after every bite. My ambition only allowed me to see the delight of learning. Due to that I became known for having heard much of the ḥadīth of Allāh's Messenger and his conditions and ways along with the life of his companions and their followers. My dealings with the creation also elevated to a level that cannot be achieved except through knowledge. In my childhood and during the times of lust and being a stranger I could have done things that the soul desires like a thirsty man does cold water, and only the fear of Allāh caused by knowledge stopped me from doing them."

<sup>47</sup> He also said about himself (*Said al-Khāṭir*, 37): "I am a man to whom knowl-

=

ceticism). After that I studied linguistics.

There was not a narrating scholar or a preacher where I lived who I didn't sit with and whenever such a person would arrive from elsewhere I would go to him. I used to choose of virtuous deeds what suited me and if I had to choose between two things I usually chose the right of *al-Haqq* (Allāh). He has planned my life and cultivated me in a beautiful fashion, guiding me towards what is best for me. He has protected me from my enemies, the jealous, and those who might plot against me. He has made everything convenient for my studies of Sacred Knowledge and sent me books from unexpected places. He gave me good understanding, the ability to memorize and write quickly and a talent for authoring books.

I lacked nothing of this world. As a matter of fact, things were quite the opposite as Allāh gave me more than enough. He put a great deal of acceptance of me into peoples' hearts and made the impact of my words leave them not questioning the authenticity of what I had to say. Approximately 200 *thimmis* [i.e. people of the book who live in Muslim lands according to a truce contract]

=  
edge was made dear since childhood, so I began studying. I was not drawn towards one particular science but all of them. When I studied one, I would not just learn some of it but wanted to learn it inside out." He studied every single day of his life to such an extent that not long before his death he still read the Qur'ān with its narrations to Ibn al-Baqillanī as mentioned by al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī: "He was 80 years old and read the ten readings in Wasit to Ibn al-Baqillanī along with his son Yusuf." This upbringing during which he was inspired to worship Allāh by fasting and praying had a great effect on this Imam since he was a child. He says about himself (*Said al-Khatīr*, 78): "I was inspired to follow the path of the ascetics in the very beginning of my childhood so I practiced continuous fasting and praying and staying by myself was made dear to me. I observed how my heart became good and I started to have a very deep insight into things."

have become Muslim at my hands and over 100 000 sinners have repented in my gatherings. More than 20 000 men have announced their repentance from foolish ways during my exhortations.<sup>48</sup>

I used to go around ḥadīth-gatherings of different scholars and run till I was out of breath so no-one would precede me. I would start my day having nothing to eat and finish it having nothing to eat. Never did Allāh degrade me to take from another person, instead He provided for me in order to protect my honor. Truth is, mentioning all my experiences would take quite a while.

And here I am now and you can see what I have achieved. I will tell you the whole story in one single sentence, and that is Allāh's saying:

وَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ وَيُعَلِّمُكُمُ اللَّهُ

Fear Allāh, and Allāh shall teach you.

[*Sūrah al-Baqarab* : 282]

---

<sup>48</sup> His grandson Abū al-Muzfir said in (*Mir'āt al-Zamān*, 8/482): 'I heard my uncle say: 'Through the two fingers of my hands I was the greatest whip in righting wrong. 100 000 people repented in my hands and 20 000 became Muslim.'" The number 20 had dropped from the print of *Mir'āt al-Zamān* but the checker of *Siyar al-A'lam al-Nubulā'*, noticed it (21/370). He also said in (*al-Muntazam*, 10/237): 'I preached in al-Halba in Ramaḍān and 120 people announced their repentance.' He also said in (*Said al-Khāṭir*, 41): "All my gatherings are attended by countless people who cry and regret their sins. Most times a group of people would get up to have the hair of their youth cut (which was a habit at that time when announcing repentance). They were often as big as 50 or 100 people and some days their number exceeded 100. Most of them were youth who had grown up playing games and immersing themselves in worldly and sinful matters.' Al-Ḥāfiẓ ibn Rajab says in (*Thail Tabaqat al-Hanabila*, 3/410): "We can conclude that his gathering of exhortation had no equal and no-one had heard of anything similar. They were very beneficial sittings where the heedless came to remember, the ignorant came to know, the sinners repented and the polytheists became Muslim."



## CHAPTER FOUR

# Benefiting from Time and Opportunities

**T**AKE HEED, MY SON, for your own benefit, and regret your previous shortcomings. Work hard to attain the company of those who have achieved perfection while you still have time. Water your tree while there is still some moisture left in it, and remember the time you have wasted for that indeed is a sufficient reminder. As time has passed, the delight of laziness has vanished and the levels of virtuous deeds have been missed. Indeed, our pious predecessors loved to enact every virtue and would cry out of missing just one.

Ibrāhīm ibn Adham<sup>49</sup>, may Allāh bestow His mercy upon him, said: “We once went to visit a worshiper who was sick and found him crying, looking at his feet. We asked, ‘Why are you crying?’ to

---

<sup>49</sup> The exemplary Imām, the knower and the master of ascetics, Abū Ishāq al-‘Ajli al-Khurasani al-Bakhlī, the resident of Syria (approximately 100-662). Abu Nu‘aym said: ‘I heard Sufyān say: ‘Ibrāhīm ibn Adham resembled Ibrāhīm al-Khalīl. Had he been a Sahabi he would have surely been a virtuous man.’” His biography can be found in *Hibyatul-Auliya’* (7/367-8/58), *Tabaqat al-Auliya’* (5/15), *Siyar al-A‘lam al-Nubulā’* (7/387), Ibn Athir, *al-Kamil* (6/56), *al-Bidāyah wa’l-Nibāyah* (10/135-145) and *Shatharāt al-Thabab* (1/255-256).

which he replied, 'They did not become dirty in the path of Allāh.' Another person cried, and they asked: 'Why are you crying?' He answered: 'Due to a day that passed without me fasting it and a night that passed without me standing it.'"

Know, my son, that days consist of hours and hours are made of the breaths you take. Every breath is a treasure chest, so beware of letting a breath pass by with no benefit. You do not want to find an empty treasure chest on the Day of Judgment and regret. Indeed, a man once said to 'Amir ibn 'Abd Qais<sup>50</sup>: "Stop, I want to talk to you", so he said to him: "Hold the sun in your hands [i.e. stop time] so I can talk to you."

Ma'rūf<sup>51</sup>, may Allāh bestow His Mercy upon him, said to some

---

<sup>50</sup> Imām Abū 'Abd Allāh (and it is said: Abū 'Amr) al-Tamīmī al-'Anbarī 'Amir ibn 'Abd Qais al-Baṣṭī. Al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī described him as: The example, the *walī* and the ascetic. He is one of the eight leading Ṭabī'in in ascetism. Ka'b al-Ahbār once saw him and said: 'This is the devotee of this nation.' Qātada said: 'When 'Amir was on the verge of death he cried.' He was asked: 'Why are you crying?' so he said: 'I am not crying because I fear death or crave this world. It is the thirst of the midday heat and the standing at night that I cry for.' He is said to have died in the time of Mu'awiya. (Refer to his biography: Ibn Sa'd: *al-Ṭabaqāt*, 7/103, Aḥmad: *al-Zubd*, 218, *Ḥiḥyatul-'Auliyyā'*, 2/87, *Sīyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 4/15, 'Alqama ibn Murthid: *Zubd al-Thamaniya min al-Ṭabī'in*, p. 37-40.)

<sup>51</sup> Ma'rūf al-Karkhī Abū Maḥfūz al-Baghdādī, described by al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī as: 'The authority of the ascetics, the blessing of our times.' Al-Ḥāfiẓ Ibn al-Jawzī has gathered his virtues in a book that has been printed. He passed away in 200 AH. Imām Aḥmad said that he is a person whose *du'ā* is answered. 'Abd Allāh ibn Aḥmad ibn Ḥanbal said: 'I said to my father: 'Did Ma'rūf have any knowledge?' to which he replied: 'My son, he had the basis of all knowledge and that is fear of Allāh.'" (Refer to his biography: *Ṭabaqāt al-'Auliyyā'*, 280, 285, *Ṭabaqāt al-Sūfiyya*, 83-90, *Ṭabaqāt al-Ḥanabila*, 1/381, 389, *Sifāt al-Safwā*, 2/79-83, *Ḥiḥyatul-'Auliyyā'*, 8/360, 368, *Sīyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 0/339, 345.)

people sitting with him: “Do you not wish to get up? Verily, the angel of the sun is dragging it and does not get weary [i.e. time is passing].”

The Prophet (ﷺ) said in a ḥadīth: “Whoever says: ‘Glory be to Allāh, the Exalted, and all praise is His,’ will have a palm tree planted for him in Paradise due to that”<sup>52</sup> So just think about the number of palm trees you will miss by wasting time!

Our predecessors had the habit of making the most of every single second. Kahmas<sup>53</sup>, for example, used to recite the Qur’ān

<sup>52</sup> Ṣaḥīḥ: Ibn Abī Shaibah: *al-Musannaf*, 10/290, al-Tirmidhī, 346, al-Nasai’ī: *‘Amal al-Yaum wa al-Layl*, 827, Ibn Ḥibbān, 2335 - *Mawarid*, al-Hakim: *al-Mustadrak ‘alā’l-Ṣaḥīḥayn*, 1/501-502, Abū Ya’la, 2233, from Jabir. Al-Tirmidhī said: ‘A hasan ṣaḥīḥ gharīb narration.’ Al-Hakim authenticated it according to the conditions of Muslim and al-Dhahabī agreed. It is as they said. The narration has supportive reports from the ḥadīth of ‘Abd Allāh ibn ‘Amr and Mu’adh ibn Sahl which were mentioned by al-Albānī in *al-Ṣaḥīḥah*, 64.

<sup>53</sup> Kahmas ibn al-Ḥaṣan al-Tamīmī, the Hanafite from al-Baṣra, the worshipper Abū al-Ḥaṣan, one of the major figures of the trustworthy. He was a pious worshipper who died in 149. An example of his plentiful worship is that he would pray 1000 units every day, and when he got weary he would say (to his soul): ‘Get up, you abode of all evil, for by Allāh I have never been pleased with you for Allāh.’ (Refer to his biography: *Taḥkirat al-Ḥuffāz*, 1/174, *Sīyar al-A’lām al-Nubulā’* 6/316, *Khulasa al-Tabḥīb al-Kamal*, 322, *Tabḥīb al-Tabḥīb*, 5408, *Shatḥarāt al-Thabab*, 1/225.)

A beneficial note: It has authentically reported from the Prophet (ﷺ) that he forbade us from completing reading the Qur’ān in less than three days. This can be found in the ḥadīth of ‘Abd Allāh ibn ‘Amr: “And Allāh’s Messenger (ﷺ) said: ‘Complete reading the Qur’ān every month.’ He said: ‘I can bear more than that’ and continued saying that until he said: ‘Complete it every three days.’” (al-Bukhārī, 1978) He also said to ‘Abd Allāh ibn ‘Amr: “Read it in

=

completely three times a day.

Forty of them would pray the morning prayer with the wuḍū of 'Ishā'. [i.e. they would stay up all night praying]<sup>54</sup>

---

=

seven days but not more than that.” (al-Bukhārī, 5054, Muslim, 1159, 184). As for the reports that mention how our noble predecessors used to read the Qur’ān in less than three days, we can only comment on that by conveying the words of the Ḥāfiẓ and virtuous critic al-Dhahabī when he related the words of Yahya ibn Aktham in the biography of the famous Imam al-Wakī’ ibn al-Jarrah (al-Siyar, 9/143): “I accompanied Wakī’ as a resident and a traveler and found him fasting all the time and completing the Qur’ān every day.” Al-Dhahabi said: “I say: “This is very impressive worship but it is not ideal, coming from someone comparable to the Imams of Athariyya. This is because the Prophet (ﷺ) has authentically been reported to have forbidden us from continuous fasting and completing the Qur’ān in less than three days. The religion of Islam is ease and following the Sunnah come first. May Allāh be pleased with Wakī’, and where in any case is someone like him?” I say: May Allāh have mercy on al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī for he was indeed a brilliant critic and deserved to be called the Imam of fair critics. May Allāh have mercy on this Imam and gather us all with the people of ḥadīth. God knows I love him a lot for His sake.

<sup>54</sup> May Allāh have mercy on Ibn al-Jawzī who said (*al-Yawaqit al-Jawziyya*, p. 28-29): “How excellent are the people who have abandoned sweet dreams, withdrawing from that for which they erected their feet for. Standing up to fatigue themselves in the dark, seeking a portion of the blessing. When the night comes they stay up, and when the day arrives they derive lessons from it. When they look at their faults they seek forgiveness, and when they think about their sins they cry and feel dejected. O dwellings of the beloved, where are your inhabitants? O places of sincerity, where are your residents? O spots of the pious, where are your people? O places of nightly prayer, where are your visitors? I have, by Allāh, traveled around and found these people extinct. Those who used to stay awake at night have gone away and the lovers of sleep are left. These times have sought eating of lusts to replace fasting.”

Rābi'a al-'Adawiyya<sup>55</sup> used to pray the whole night, and when

<sup>55</sup> Rābi'a al-'Adawiyya, Umm al-Khair bint Isma'il, the pious, covered, ascetic and God fearing worshipper from Basra. She is said to have lived for 80 years and died in 180 AH. The narration was related by al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī by way of Ibn Abī al-Dunya: We were told by Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥusayn, I was told by 'Isā ibn Maymun al-'Attār, I was told by 'Abda bint Abī Shawwāl who used to serve Rābi'a al-'Adawiyya: 'Rābi'a used to pray the whole night. When morning would come she would lay down till the sky would turn to yellow. I used to hear her say: 'My soul, how much do you sleep and till what time do you stand up? You might sleep for just a little and never get up until the Day of Resurrection.'" al-Ḥāfiẓ ibn al-Jawzī: *al-Muthib*, p. 211: 'Rābi'a the worshipper used to get up to pray in the beginning of the night and say:

The lover has stood up for her hope  
And her heart is about to fly away from joy

When the night was over she would say: "No! It has been taken away!" and recite:

The darkness is gone with its intimacy and concord  
If only the night and its intimacy would come again

An important note: Rābi'a al-'Adawiyya is a pious woman of worship and asceticism who has been mistreated by the people. Some accused her of believing in ḥulūl, and Allah's refuge is sought, some claimed she held the belief of Ibāḥa and others denied that she had ever existed. All of this is wrong and unjust as great Imāms like Sufyān al-Thawrī and Shu'ba have related things that render all these accusations false. Al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī said (*Siyar al-A'lam al-Nubulā'*, 232/243): 'Abū Sa'īd ibn al-'Arabī said: 'As for Rābi'a, people have learned much wisdom from her. Sufyān, Shu'ba and others have related things about her that render the things said about her futile. What she was accused of was derived from the following words she had said:

I have indeed put you in the heart to speak to me  
And have permitted my body to whoever wants to sit with me

=

dawn came she lay down for a bit and then got up frightened, saying to herself: "Sleep in the grave is long."

=

Some said she believes in ḥulūl based on the first line and that she believes in Ibāḥa based on the second.<sup>7</sup> I (al-Dhahabī) say: This is exaggeration and ignorance. It may very well be that the person who said this is himself a person who believes in these things and wanted to use this poetry to support his disbelief just like they used the ḥadīth: 'I will be the hearing that he hears with.' I say: From the shameful traits of today's Hululite Šūfis is their attempts to support their evidently deviant beliefs by forged and contradictory poetry and made up stories attributed to her. May Allāh give us refuge and not forsake us! They have even authored a book about these things and mentioned things about her life that give goose bumps to any monotheistic Sunni Muslim. Even more ridiculous than this group of people are those who made a film about her, portraying her as a dancer in the early parts of her life and other such falsehood to drive people from their religion. May Allāh misguide and humiliate them with this despicable and shameless discipline of theirs that keeps twisting realities. As for those who say she never existed, we ask them to think a bit about the sources of her biographies. They are all related by the great Imams of this discipline such as al-Dhahabī (*Sīyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā*, 8/242, *al-'Ibar*, 1/278), Ibn Khalakān (*Wafayāt al-A'yān*, 3/215), Ibn al-'Imād (*Shatharāt al-Dhabab*, 1/193), Ibn Kathīr (*al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 10/186), al-Khatib al-Baghdādī (*Tārikh Baghdād*, 2/40) and Ibn al-Jawzī (*Sīfat al-Safwa*, 4/17-19). Al-Hāfiẓ Ibn al-Jawzī even dedicated a book for her virtues as mentioned by al-Dhahabī (*Sīyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā*, 8/242) and also named his oldest daughter and mother of his grandson Abū al-Muzfir (the author of *Mir'āt al-Zamān*) Rabi'a. You can also see how he mentions occasions from her life in most of his books exhortation.

## CHAPTER FIVE

# What Can This Eternal Life be Bought With?

**W**HEN A PERSON THINKS about the life of this world before entering it, he considers it long. Likewise, when he thinks about it after leaving it, he sees a long period of time and knows that the stay in the grave is long. When he thinks about the Day of Judgment, he knows that its fifty thousand years long, and when he thinks about Paradise and Hell, he knows that they will never end. Now, when he goes back to look at the time spent in this world, lets say 60 years<sup>56</sup>, he can see that

---

<sup>56</sup> Abū Hurayrah (*radīy Allāhu ‘anhu*) has been reported to have said: “Allāh’s Messenger (ﷺ) said: “The lifespans of my nation are between 60 and 70. The minority will live beyond that.” (al-Tirmidhī, 3550, Ibn Mājah, 4236, Ibn Ḥibbān, #2467- *Mawārid*, al-Ḥākim: *al-Mustadrak ‘alā’l-Sahīḥayn*, 2/427) Al-Tirmidhī said: ‘*Ḥasan gharīb*.’ Al-Ḥākim said: ‘*Ṣaḥīḥ* by the conditions of Muslim.’ Al-Dhahabī agreed. Al-Ḥāfiẓ ibn Ḥajr said (*Fath al-Bārī*, 11/240): ‘Its chain is ḥasan.’ Truth is that this ḥadīth is *ḥasan li dhātihī ṣaḥīḥ li gharībihī* due to another route with a ḥasan chain as well with al-Tirmidhī (2331) who said: ‘*Ḥasan gharīb*.’ A wise man said: ‘Man’s age consists of four phases: childhood, youth, maturity and old age which is the last of them and usually occurs between the age of 60 and 70. During this time a man becomes evidently weak by deficiency and becomes

thirty of it is spent sleeping, fifteen or so is spent in childhood and most of what's left goes to chasing after desires, food and money. When he accounts for what is left, he finds that much of it is nothing but showing off and heedlessness. The price of eternal life is the hours of his life, but what is left of them for him to buy it with?!

---

ing geriatric, and he should seriously dedicate all his time for the afterlife as being the energetic and strong man he used to be isn't possible anymore.' Al-Ḥāfiẓ mentioned this (*al-Fath*, 11/240). I say: Think about the Prophet's (ﷺ) words: "May Allāh pardon a man whose death He has delayed till the age of 60." (al-Bukhārī, 6419, a marfū' report from the ḥadīth of Abū Hurayrah (*radīy Allāhu 'anhu*)).



## CHAPTER SIX

### Awakening After Heedlessness

**M**Y SON, DO NOT LET YOUR PAST carelessness make you lose hope of achieving good, for many people have come back to wakefulness after long sleep. Shaikh Abū Ḥākim<sup>57</sup>, may Allāh bestow His Mercy upon him, told me what follows: ‘When I was a child, I spent my time in idle play and did not pay attention to Sacred Knowledge. Then my father Abū ‘Abdullāh, Allāh bestow His Mercy upon him, wanted to talk to me and said: ‘My son, I will not be here for you forever, so take twenty dinārs, open a bread shop and make some money.’

---

<sup>57</sup> The great exemplary scholar Abū Ḥākim Ibrāhīm ibn Dinār al-Nahruwānī al-Ḥanbalī, one of the Imams of Baghdad, a godly ascetic, who was benevolent and forbearing. He was one of the greatest scholars in the field of inheritance. He established a school by Bab al-Azaj and in which he remained, worshipping Allāh. He preferred to be unknown, and was always content with his condition. He used to earn his bread as a tailor, taking only two coins for a garment. Some individuals attempted to anger him but to no avail, and he would serve the disabled and elderly with a joyful face. His hearing of ḥadīth was correct. He passed away in 556. (al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī: *Siyar al-A‘lām al-Nubulā’*, 20/396. For his biography, refer to: Ibn al-Jawzī: *al-Muntaẓam*, 10/201, 202, *Tbaīl Tabaqāt al-Hanabila*, 1/231-241, *Sbatharāt al-Thabab*, 4/176, *al-Bidāyah wa’l-Nihāyah*, 12/245)

I said: ‘What are you saying?’ So he said: ‘Open a cloth shop then.’ I said: ‘How can you say this to me when I’m the son of the judge of judges ‘Abdullāh al-Dāmaghānī<sup>58</sup>?’ He replied: ‘But I do not see you seeking knowledge.’ I said: ‘Give me a lecture right now.’ He did so and I came forward to busy myself with knowledge. From thereon, I began taking the studying of Sacred Knowledge seriously so Allāh gave me success in that.”

A colleague of Abū Muḥammad al-Halāwānī,<sup>59</sup> may Allāh bestow His Mercy upon him, told me the following: ‘My father died when I was 21 and at that time I was known for being idle. When I went to claim a house I had inherited from its inhabitants, I heard them say: the Mudbir, i.e. *al-Rabīṭ* [he who abandoned the adornment of life] has arrived.’ Having heard this, I said to my-

---

<sup>58</sup> The profound scholar, the mufti of ‘Iraq, the judge of judges, Abū ‘Abdullāh Muḥammad ibn ‘Alī ibn Muḥammad ibn Hasan ibn ‘Abd al-Wahhāb ibn Husawayhi al-Dāmaghānī al-Hanāfi (Dāmaghānī refers to somebody from Dāmaghān which is a big city between al-Rayy and Naisabur). Al-Dhahabi said: “He was a person of nobility and great decency and has been compared to judge Abū Yusuf in his times. Among his children were Imams and judges.” He died in 478 and his son, the judge of judges Abū al-Hasan led his funeral prayer. For his biography, refer to: *Tārīkh Baghdād*, 3/109, *al-Bidāyah wa’l-Nihāyah*, 12/129, *Sbatḥarāt al-Thabab*, 3/362, *al-Fawa’id al-Bahīyyah*, 182-183, *al-Kāmil*, 10/146, *Siyar al-A’lām al-Nubulā’*, 18/485, *al-Ibar*, 3/292.

<sup>59</sup> The jurist ‘Abdu’l-Raḥmān ibn Muḥammad ibn ‘Alī ibn Muḥammad al-Halāwānī, the jurist and Imam Abu Muḥammad ibn Abī al-Fath. Al-Munthiri said: “He was a Hanbali scholar and was versed in jurisprudence, Qur’ānic exegesis and ḥadīth.” Ibn Rajab said: “I saw something that was written in his handwriting which indicates that he has authored a major commentary on the differed upon issues. He has also written a 41 volume commentary on the Qur’ān which he has talked about.” For his biography, refer to: Ibn Rajab: *Thail Tabaqāt al-Hanabila*, 1/221.

self: ‘Is this what they say about me?’ I went to my mother and told her: You will find me in the masjid of Shaikh Abū al-Khaṭṭāb<sup>60</sup> if you need me.’ I accompanied him and did not leave except for delivering judgments. I then became a judge for a period of time.” I say: “I saw him delivering legal verdicts and debating.”

---

<sup>60</sup> The Shaikh, Imām and great God fearing scholar of the Ḥanbalites, Abū al-Khaṭṭāb Maḥfūz ibn Aḥmad ibn Ḥasan ibn Ḥasan al-‘Irāqī al-Kalwadhānī at first, then al-Baghdādī later on (d. 510 AH). Al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī said: ‘Abū al-Khaṭṭāb was a fine scholar. He was benevolent, truthful, well mannered and spoke extraordinarily eloquent arabic. He was a smart man who narrated many ḥadīths and studied and recorded ḥadīth as well.’ Ibn Rajab said (*al-Thail*, 1/120): ‘Abū al-Khaṭṭāb was a great jurist who used to focus much on verification of matters. He has checked and investigated numerous matters of jurisprudence and legal theory and differs with the majority view of the Hanbalites in some issues.’ After this he went on to mention many examples of that. For his biography, refer to: *Siyar al-A‘lām al-Nubulā*, 19/348, Ibn al-Jawzī: *al-Muntaẓam*, 9/190-193, *al-Kāmil*, 10/524, *al-Ibar*, 4/21, *Mir’āt al-Zamān*, 8/41-42, *al-Bidāyah wa’l-Nihāyah*, 12/180, *Tbail Tabaqāt al-Ḥanabila*, 1/116-127, *Shatharāt al-Thahab*, 4/27-28.

## CHAPTER SEVEN

# Methodology of Cultivation by Day and Night

**M**Y SON, MAKE IT BINDING on yourself to get up at the beginning of Fajr, and do not converse about worldly matters. Our pious predecessors never talk about a worldly matter at that time at all.<sup>61</sup> When you wake up, say: "Praise be to Allah who gave me life after having caused me

---

<sup>61</sup> This was the way they used to do things back then. Hassān ibn 'Aṭīyya, one of the trustworthy Ṭābā'ī, would pray 'Aṣr and sit in the maṣjid, remembering Allāh till sunset (*Sīyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 5/467). Al-Ḥāfiẓ Ibn al-Qayyim, the dutiful student of Shaikh al-Islām Ibn Taymiyyah, says about his teacher (*al-Wābil al-Sayyib*, 39-40): "I was with him once when he prayed Fajr. After praying he remained seated, remembering Allāh, Most High, till it was almost midday. Then he looked at me and said: "This is my lunch, and if I do not nourish myself with lunch I will become weak." I say: One of the most important things a Muslim should do after the Fajr prayer is to turn completely to Allāh by remembering Him and reciting in the forenoon the words of remembrance established by the Sacred Law. He should make this remembrance a continuous habit and never leave it. Later on he can add other virtuous remembrance or Qur'ānic recital to this until sunrise. Refer to: Ibn al-Qayyim, *Tariq al-Hijratain*, p. 271, 272, and our booklet *Adkhabār al-Sabāhi wa al-Masā'*.

to die, and He shall resurrect us.”<sup>62</sup> and “Praise be to Allāh who holds the sky from falling on the earth except by His permission. Allāh is truly benevolent and merciful to the people.”<sup>63</sup>

Then get up to purify yourself and pray the Sunnah of Fajr<sup>64</sup>, then go to the Masjid in a humble attitude and on your way say: “O Allāh! I ask You by the right that those asking have upon You and by the right of this walking of mine. I did not leave [my home] in arrogance and pride, nor to be seen or heard. I only left out of fearing Your anger and seeking Your pleasure. I ask You to pro-

<sup>62</sup> Al-Bukhārī: *Kitāb al-Da'wāt*, Chapter: “What should be said before sleep” (#6312) from the ḥadīth of Hudhaifah, *Kitāb al-Da'wāt*, Chapter: “What should be said after waking up in the morning” (6325) from the ḥadīth of Abū Dharr, Muslim: *Kitāb al-Dhikr wa'l-Du'ā*, Chapter: “What should be said when going to sleep and laying down on the bed” (2713), (59), from the ḥadīth of al-Barā'a ibn 'Āzib. Al-Ḥāfiẓ said (*al-Fath*, 11/114): “‘And He will resurrect us’: Meaning: He will bring us back to life on the Day of Judgement. The Arabs say: ‘Allāh *nashara* the dead’ meaning, ‘He gave them life and they lived.’”

<sup>63</sup> Abū Ya'la: *al-Musnad*, 1791, al-Nasā'ī: *'Amal al-Yaum wa al-Laila*, 853- 854, Ibn al-Sinni, 12, Ibn Ḥibbān: *al-Ṣaḥīḥ*, 2362- *Mawāriḍ*, al-Ḥākim, 1/548. All of them are *marfū' mutawwal* narrations through the chain of Abū al-Zubayr who narrated from Jābir. After attributing it to Abū Ya'la, al-Haythamī said (*al-Majma' al-Zawā'id*, 10/120): ‘It narrators are narrators of *al-Ṣaḥīḥ* with the exception of Ibrāhīm ibn al-Ḥajjāj al-Shamī who is trustworthy.’ Al-Munthirī said (*al-Targhib*, 1/416): ‘Related by Abū Ya'la with a ṣaḥīḥ chain.’ Al-Ḥākim hold that the ḥadīth is saḥīḥ by the conditions of Muslim and al-Dhahabī agrees. Al-Ḥāfiẓ said (*Natā'ij al-Afḳār*, p. 198): ‘A *hasan gharīb* narration.’

<sup>64</sup> 'Ā'ishah has been reported to have said: “The Prophet (ﷺ) did not take care of any voluntary act of worship the way he took care of the two prayer units of Fajr.” (al-Bukhārī, 1169, Muslim, 724, 94 (repeated). It has also been reported from 'Ā'ishah that the Prophet (ﷺ) said: “The two prayer units of Fajr are better than this world and all that it contains.” (Muslim, 725, 96) In another report of his (725, 97): “They are more beloved to me than the whole world.”

tect me from the Fire and forgive me my sins. Truly, none forgives sins but You.”<sup>65</sup>

Join the Ṣalāh on the right side of the Imām<sup>66</sup> and when you have finished the Ṣalāh, say the following ten times: “There is no deity worthy of worship but Allāh alone without partners. His is all Kingship and His is all praise. He gives life and causes death.

---

<sup>65</sup> A weak ḥadīth: Aḥmad, 3/21, Ibn Mājah, 778, Ibn al-Sinnī, 83. Al-Busayrī said (*al-Zawā'id*): ‘Its chain has a continuous chain of weak narrators.’ The ḥadīth was also declared weak by al-Munthirī (*al-Targhib*) and Shaikh al-Islām (*al-Tawassul wa al-Wasila*). Refer also to: al-Albānī: *al-Tawassul*, p. 93-99, and *Silsilah Aḥādīth al-Ḍa'if*, 24, where he has done a good job in clarifying the hidden defects of this ḥadīth. This narration can be replaced by what has been related by Muslim (763, 191) from the ḥadīth of Ibn ‘Abbās that mentions how he stayed the night in the house of his aunt Maymuna. In this narration he talks about the nightly prayer of the Prophet (ﷺ) and says: “The Mu’adhin announced the call for prayer - that is, the morning prayer - so he left to the prayer, saying: ‘O Allāh, put light in my heart and light on my tongue. Put light in my hearing and light in my sight. Put light behind me and light in front of me. Put light above me and light beneath me. O Allāh, give me light.’”

<sup>66</sup> Imām al-Bukhārī placed a chapter heading in *Kitāb al-Aḍbān* of his *al-Ṣaḥīḥ* (79) called: “*The right side of the masjid and the Imām*”. Al-Ḥāfiẓ said (*al-Fath*, 2/213): “It is as if he is pointing here to what al-Nasā’i related with a saḥīḥ chain from al-Barā’a who said: ‘We used to like being on the right side of the Prophet (ﷺ) when we were praying behind him.’” Abū Dāwūd also related a *marfu’* *ḥasan* narration from ‘Ā’ishah: ‘Allāh sends praises on the right side of the rows and His angels pray for them.’ I say: Many people have abandoned these Prophetic traditions and virtues to the extent that I have seen with my own eyes how some of our brethren actually prefer the left side over the right side because the left one has air conditioners on it. Exalted is Allāh above the actions of those who waste the abundant good contained in Allāh’s praise for him in the highest gathering and the seeking of forgiveness of the angels for him.

In His hand is all good and He is capable of anything.”<sup>67</sup>

After that, say *subhan Allāh* ten times, *alḥamdulillāh* ten times and *Allāhu akbar* ten times.<sup>68</sup> Then recite the verse of the Footstool<sup>69</sup> and ask Allāh, Glorious is He, to accept your Ṣalāh. Then, remain seated and remember Allāh, Most High, till the sun has risen. Then, pray what Allāh has written for you and If you can per-

<sup>67</sup> A ṣaḥīḥ narration: Aḥmad, 5/415, from Abū Ayyub al-Anṣārī. Al-Albānī authenticated it due to its many chains and supportive narrations. Refer to: *Ṣaḥīḥ al-Targhib wa'l-Tarhib*, 656, *Silsilah Aḥādīth al-Ṣaḥībah*, 113-114.

<sup>68</sup> A ṣaḥīḥ narration: Abū Dāwūd, 5065, al-Tirmidhī, 3407, al-Nasā'ī, 3/74, from 'Abdullāh ibn 'Amr. Its chain was authenticated by al-Nawawī (*al-Athkār*, p. 142) and al-Hāfiẓ (*al-Futūḥāt al-Rabbāniyya*, 1/51).

<sup>69</sup> A ṣaḥīḥ narration: Ibn al-Sinnī, 12, from Muḥammad ibn Ḥumair from Muḥammad ibn Ziyād al-Alḥānī from Abū Umāmah as marfū' with the wording: 'Whoever reads the verse of the Footstool after every prayer, then nothing stands between him and Paradise except death.' Al-Munthirī said (*al-Targhib*, 2/261): 'Related by al-Nasā'ī and al-Ṭabarānī with chains of which one is ṣaḥīḥ. Our Shaikh Abū al-Ḥasan said it corresponds to the conditions of al-Bukhārī and Ibn Ḥibbān in *Kitāb al-Ṣalāh* and authenticated it. Al-Ṭabarānī added from some of its routes: {*Qul huwa Allāhu aḥad.*} Its chain with this addition is good as well.' Al-Haithamī said (*al-Majma' al-Zawā'id*, 10/102): 'Related by al-Ṭabarānī in *al-Kabīr* and *al-Ansat* with different chains, one of them being good.' The ḥadīth can be found with: al-Nasā'ī: *Amal al-Yaum wa al-Laila*, 100. It has a supportive narration in the ḥadīth of al-Mughira ibn Shu'ba which was related by Abū Nu'aym (*al-Ḥilyatu'l-Awliya'*, 3/121) with a ḥasan chain. Al-Hāfiẓ ibn al-Jawzī erroneously included this ḥadīth in his *al-Mawḍū'āt*. For more details on the ḥadīth, refer to: *Zādu'l-Ma'ād*, 1/303, 304, al-Shawkanī: *Tuḥfāt al-Dhakīrīn*, p. 117, al-Albānī: *Silsilah Aḥādīth al-Ṣaḥībah*, 972. A beneficial note: Shaikh al-Islām Ibn al-Qayyim said (*Zādu'l-Ma'ād*, 1/204): 'I have heard that our Shaikh Abu al-'Abbas Ibn Taymiyyah, may Allāh give reverence to his spirit, said: 'I have not left it right after every prayer.'"

form eight units, that is good.<sup>70</sup>

---

<sup>70</sup> This is based on the ḥadīth of Ummu Hani' Fakhita bint Abī Ṭalib where she says: "I went to Allah's Messenger (ﷺ) in the year of conquest and found him taking a bath. After finishing he prayed eight units and this was at forenoon." (al-Bukhārī, 1176, Muslim, 336, 82) A narration of Muslim says (336, 71): "Then he prayed eight units of the forenoon voluntary prayer." Al-Nawawī said (*Sharḥ Ṣaḥīḥ Muslim*, 4, 29): "This wording contains a delicate benefit and that is the units of the forenoon prayer are eight in number. The proof is derived from her words: 'the forenoon voluntary prayer' which clearly indicate that this is an established and known Sunnah which is not evident in the narration that says: 'he prayed eight units and this was at forenoon.'"

A beneficial note: The forenoon prayer (*Ṣalāt al-Duḥā*) is the prayer of the *Awwābīn* i.e. those who are coming to their senses after heedlessness and those who are returning from sinning to repentance. It is ideally performed as eight prayer units and on a normal level as four or six. It is best to perform it at the hottest time of the day and at the rising of forenoon. Generally it can be performed at any time between sunrise and midday. Refer to: Ibn al-Qayyim: *Zād al-Ma'ād*, 1/341, 360.



## CHAPTER EIGHT

# Sacred Knowledge Supersedes all Voluntary Actions

ONCE YOU HAVE REVIEWED YOUR lesson till forenoon, pray eight units of *Ṣalāt al-Duḥa* [the forenoon prayer]. Then keep yourself busy with reading or copying texts till 'Asr time. After 'Asr, return to your studies until Maghrib time.<sup>71</sup> After [praying] Maghrib, pray two units, reading two Juz' of Qur'an in them, and study again after praying the

---

<sup>71</sup> It should be noted, may Allāh have mercy on us all, that the specified times and methods of voluntary worship (*aurad*) vary from person to person whether they are related to invocation, remembrance, reading the Qur'an, beneficial knowledge or seeking forgiveness at night or day. Ibn Qudama says (*Mukhtasar Minhāj al-Qāsidīn*, p. 82): "The traveler on the path to Afterlife is one of six: 1. a worshiper, 2. a scholar, 3. a student, 4. a man of responsibility, 5. a laborer, or 6. someone who has immersed himself in his love for Allāh and spends all his time in that." After this the author began clarifying and arranging the preferred actions for each depending on their varying conditions. The things he mentioned are very important so do refer to it. As for Ibn al-Jawzī's advice here, it should be known that it is directed towards a student of Sacred Knowledge who is able to dedicate all of his time for his studies with nothing to hold him back. And Allāh knows best.

Ṣalāh of 'Isha'.<sup>72</sup> Then lay down on your right side,<sup>73</sup> say *subhan Allāh* thirty three times, *alḥamdulillāh* thirty three times and *Allāhu akbar* thirty four times.<sup>74</sup> Say: "O Allāh! Protect me from Your punishment on the day You shall gather Your slaves."<sup>75</sup>

<sup>72</sup> Al-Ḥāfiẓ ibn al-Jawzī said (*al-Ḥaẓẓu 'ala Ḥifẓ al'Ilm wa Dhikru Kibār al-Huffāẓ* p. 35): "How to master what you memorise (the text says *Aḥkam*, but it seems to mean *Iḥkam* instead): The secret behind mastering what you memorise is lots of repetition, and people are different in that: With some the information sticks with just a little amount of repetition and others need to repeat it many times. Therefore, a man should repeat his lessons in order to have it firmly established in his memory. The Prophet (ﷺ) has said: "Take good care of the Qur'ān for it escapes the chests of men quicker than a precious camel from its leash." I say: This ḥadīth is agreed upon: al-Bukhārī, 5033, Muslim, 791, 231, from Abū Hurairah.

<sup>73</sup> Refer to: *Zād al-Ma'ād*, 4/239: "His preparations for sleep and wakefulness." Also, it was related (al-Bukhārī, 6315, Muslim, 2710, 56) from the ḥadīth of al-Barā' ibn 'Āzib that Allāh's Messenger (ﷺ) said: "When you come to your resting place, perform the wudu you'd perform for praying. Then lay down on your right side and say: 'O Allāh, I have submitted myself to You, turned my face to You, entrusted my affair to You and put my trust in You having my back. I have done this out of my desire to arrive to You and out of my fear of You. No shelter is there from You and no savior except You. I have believed in Your Book which You have revealed and Your prophet whom you have sent.' Make these your final words. If you die on that night you will die on your *fitrah* (natural disposition)".

<sup>74</sup> Based on the ḥadīth (al-Bukhārī, 6318, Muslim, 2727) from 'Alī where Allāh's Messenger (ﷺ) said to Fāṭima: "When you go to sleep, say *Allāhu akbar* 33 times, *subhan Allāh* 33 times and *alḥamdulillāh* 33 times." Another narration says: "*subhan Allāh* is 34 times" and another one says: "*Allāhu akbar* is 34 times." 'Alī said: "I have not left it ever since I heard it from Allāh's Messenger (ﷺ)." He was asked: "Not even on the night of *Siffin* (a war)?" to which he replied: "Not even on the night of *Siffin*."

<sup>75</sup> Sahih: Abū Dāwūd, 5045, Ibn al-Sinnī, 7337, al-Nasā'i: *'Amal al-Yaumi wa al-Laila*, 452, al-Tabarānī: *al-Mu'jam al-Kabir*, 394, from Hafsah, the mother of the believers, where he told that whenever Allāh's Messenger (ﷺ) wanted to sleep=

When you open your eyes after sleep, know that your soul has now taken its share.<sup>76</sup> Get up, perform ablution and pray what you can in the darkness of the night. Open your prayer with two light units, and follow them with two units, reciting two Juz' from the Qur'ān in them. After that, start your studies, as Sacred Knowledge is better than all voluntary actions.<sup>77</sup>

= he put his right hand under his cheek and said: "Allāh, protect me from Your punishment on the day You shall resurrect your slaves" three times. This narration was declared ḥasan by al-Ḥāfiẓ (*Natā'ij al-Afḵār*, p. 193). It has supportive narrations from al-Barā', Hudhaifah and Ibn Mas'ūd which raise it to the level of ṣaḥīḥ, and Allāh knows best.

<sup>76</sup> As for his guidance while being awake, he used to wake up when the rooster crowed, praising Allāh Most High, saying *Allāhu akbar* and *lā ilāha illallāh* and calling to Him. After that he would use the tooth stick (*miswak*), get up for ablution and stand in front of His Lord in prayer, conversing with Him through His speech, praising and hoping, desiring and fearing. Is there really anything better than this in preserving the health of one's body and heart, spirit and strength and the enjoyment of this world and the hereafter? Refer to: *Zad al-Ma'ād*, 4/246.

<sup>77</sup> This has been mentioned by many Imāms such as al-Zuhri, Sufyān al-Thauri, Abū Hanīfah and al-Shāfi'i. You should refer to Ibn Rajab's explanation of Abū al-Darda's ḥadīth (p. 96, 103) as he has analyzed this issue in it in academic and fair fashion. Every student should understand his words and follow them. He said: "The scholars have differed concerning this issue: Which one is better, studying Sacred Knowledge or performing voluntary prayers and reciting the Qur'ān and words of remembrance? Knowledge is better for him who studies sincerely for Allāh's sake and has a good and clear mind. However, this should still be joined with a good amount of prayers and worship. If you find him to be a serious student but notice that he's lacking in his worship, it is a lazy and worthless person you're dealing with, and this person is not truthful when he says his intentions are good. As for when one studies ḥadīth and fiqh simply as an intellectual pursuit, worship is better in such a case. In fact, the difference between the two is like the difference between the normative and superlative. This is a general categorization, and by Allāh, I've have only seen a few who are sincere in seeking this knowledge."

## CHAPTER NINE

# Beware of Pitfalls and Obstacles

**P**RACTICE ISOLATION for it is the basis of all good,<sup>78</sup> and beware of bad companionship, and let the books and reading about the lives of our predecessors be your companions.

---

<sup>78</sup> Al-Imām al-Bukhārī has a chapter in his *Ṣaḥīḥ* called: “Isolation is a rest from mixing with bad people.” You should know that the differing of scholars here concerns the superiority of marriage and being single and that it depends on the person and his condition. One of the most important things one should pay attention to here is that an ignorant person isolating himself only harms him. A scholar was once asked: “What do you say about the isolation of an ignorant person?” and he replied: “Insane calamity.” He was then asked: “What about that of a learned one?” He said: “Why do you wish for it? Leave it, for it has its feet and water reservoir. It will drink water and eat the trees till its Lord meets it.” Al-Imam al-Khattabi has authored a great book on isolation and abridged the truth about this issue in the end (p. 117-118), saying: “The ideal here is that a person does not neglect any duties he may have towards others even if they don't ask him to perform them, and that he does not get involved in falsehood that is not binding on him even if they invite him. Indeed, whoever gets occupied with what does not concern him will miss out on what does concern him, and whoever gets busy with falsehood will become apathetic with truth. So be with the people in good and stay away from their evil, and aim to be a witness who is like he wasn't there and a learned man who is like an ignoramus.”

Do not delve into a science before mastering what comes before it. Read how the most complete of us used to seek knowledge and act accordingly, and do not be pleased with less than that. The poet has said:

In faults of men I have not seen anything  
Like the shortcoming of the able in achieving completeness

Know also, that Sacred Knowledge raises the status of the lowly. Indeed, many scholars used to be unknown and unappreciated before becoming scholars. 'Aṭā ibn Abū Rabāḥ,<sup>79</sup> for example, was black and not pleasant looking. Sulaimān ibn 'Abd al-Mālik,<sup>80</sup> who was the caliph at that time, came to him with his two sons

<sup>79</sup> 'Aṭā ibn Abū Rabāḥ Aslam. Al-Hāfiẓ al-Dhahabī said: "The Imam, Shaikh al-Islam and the Mufti of Haram, Abū Muḥammad al-Qurashi, their freed slave from Makkah. His loyalty is said to have been for people of Jumah. He was raised with al-Janad and grew up in Makkah. He was born during the caliphate of 'Uthmān.' 'Aṭā was black, one eyed, snub-nosed, lame and limping and finally became blind as well. He was a trustworthy narrator, a jurist, a scholar, a narrator of many ḥadīths and was the most knowledgeable concerning the rules of pilgrimage. Refer to his biography: Ibn Sa'd: *al-Tabaqāt*, 5/467, *Taḥthib al-Kamal*, 938, *al-Ibar*, 1/141, *Siyar al-A'lam al-Nubulā'*, 5/78, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 9/306, *al-'Aqd al-Thamin*, 6/84, *Shahbarūt al-Thabab*, 1/147. The narration was related by: al-Khatīb al-Baghdādī: *al-Faqih wa al-Mutafaqqih*, 1/31, who made this chapter heading regarding it: "Those who rose from being slaves to sitting in the gatherings of the kings."

<sup>80</sup> Sulaimān ibn 'Abd al-Mālik ibn Marwān ibn al-Hakam ibn Abī al-'As ibn Umayya, the caliph, Abū Ayyub al-Qurashī al-Umawī. He was pledged allegiance to in 69 after his brother al-Walīd, and he passed away in 99. His caliphate lasted for two years, nine months and twenty days. Ibn Sirīn said: "Allāh have mercy on Sulaiman. He started his caliphate by reviving the prayer and finished it by appointing 'Umar ibn 'Abd al-'Azīz as his successor." For his biography, refer to: al-Tabārī: *al-Tārīkh*, 6/546, Ibn al-Athīr: *al-Kāmil*, 5/37, *Wafayāt al-A'yān*, 2/460, 467, *al-Ibar*, 1/115, 118, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 9/183, *Shahbarūt al-Thabab*, 1/116, *Siyar al-A'lam al-Nubulā'*, 5/111.

and asked him about the rites of pilgrimage. He answered whilst turning his face away from them. The caliph said to his sons: "Get up and do not be indolent or lazy in seeking knowledge, as I shall never forget this humiliation in front of this black slave."

Al-Ḥasan,<sup>81</sup> Ibn Sirīn,<sup>82</sup> Makhūl<sup>83</sup> and others were slaves as well, but were still given honor and attained high status through knowledge and fear of God.

<sup>81</sup> Al-Ḥasan ibn Abī al-Ḥasan Yasar al-Baṣrī Abū Sa'īd, the freed slave of Zaid ibn Thābit, the example of ascetic scholars and one of the great characters of the Tabi'īn. He died in 110. Ayyūb al-Sakhtīyānī said: "Had you seen him you would have said that you have never sat with a scholar of jurisprudence." Abu Ja'far al-Bāqir said: 'That is the person whose speech resembles that of the Prophets.' Refer to his biography: Ibn Sa'd: *al-Tabaqāt*, 7/156, *Ḥīyatn'l-Auliya'*, 2/131, Aḥmad: *al-Zuhd*, 2/225, *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 4/563, *Tathkirat al-Huffāz*, 1/66. Ibn al-Jawzi has dedicated a book for the life and virtues of this Imam which is printed and available.

<sup>82</sup> Muḥammad ibn Sirīn, the Imām and Shaikh al-Islām, Abū Bakr al-Anṣārī al-Anasī al-Baṣrī, the freed slave of Anas ibn Mālik, the companion and servant of Allāh's Messenger (ﷺ). He died in 110. Abū 'Uwana said: 'I saw Muḥammad ibn Sirīn in the marketplace, and nobody saw him without him mentioning Allāh.' For his biography, refer to: Ibn Sa'd: *al-Tabaqāt*, 7/193, *Ḥīyatn'l-Auliya'*, 2/263, *Tārikh Baghdād*, 5/331, *Tathkirat al-Huffāz*, 1/73, *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 4/606, *al-Ibar*, 1/135, *Mir'at al-Janān*, 1/232, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 9/267, *Shatharāt al-Thahab*, 1/138.

<sup>83</sup> Makhūl: the scholar of Syria. His name is Makhūl ibn Abī Muslim Shahrab ibn Shathil ibn Sind ibn Shirwan ibn Yazdak ibn Yaghuth ibn Kisra. He was taken prisoner in Kabul but his master's identity is disputed over, but the most correct of opinions is that he was the slave of a Huthali woman. He was from the middle of the Tabi'īn and died in 112, 113, or 114. Abū Hātim said: 'Nobody in Syria is as knowledgeable in jurisprudence as Makhūl.' For his biography, refer to: Ibn Sa'd: *al-Tabaqāt*, 7/453, *Ḥīyatn'l-Auliya'*, 5/177, *Tabthib al-Asmā'ī wa al-Lughāt*, 2/113, 114, *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 5/155, *Tathkirat al-Huffāz*, 1/107, *al-Ibar*, 1/140, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 9/305, *Husn al-Muhadara*, 1/119.

## CHAPTER TEN

### Self Sufficiency

**M**Y SON, STRIVE HARD TO PROTECT your honor from running after this world and having to lower yourself to its people. Be content and you shall live honorably.<sup>84</sup> A saying goes: 'Whoever is content with bread and vegetables will not be subjugated by anyone.' A Bedouin once passed by Basra and said: 'Who is the Master of this city?' It was said to him: 'Al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī.' He said: 'And how did he become their master?' They said: "He had no need of their worldly effects but they were in need of his knowledge".<sup>85</sup>

---

<sup>84</sup> Al-Ḥāfiẓ Ibn Rajab al-Ḥanbalī said in his explanation of Abū al-Dardā's ḥadīth (p. 150-152): "He who spreads his knowledge to the people and speaks to them must be very careful of not asking things from them. He must not be covetous for any of their wealth or provisions nor wish to win their hearts. He should just spread his knowledge and be content with not hoping anything from them through careful godliness. This is because greed of worldly matters and yearning them are ugly traits especially when found in a scholar."

<sup>85</sup> Ibn Rajab related this story while explaining the ḥadīth of Abū al-Dardā': 'Whoever takes a path that he shall seek knowledge on...(p. 154)' May Allāh have mercy on al-Ḥasan who said: "Everything has something staining it, and =

Know, my son, that my father was a rich man who left wealth worth thousands behind him. When I reached puberty, I was given twenty dinars and two houses and I was told it was all he had left. I took the dinars and bought books of Sacred Knowledge with them. I sold the houses and spent the money in my pursuit of knowledge. Nothing remained of the wealth I had inherited.<sup>86</sup> Your father has never humiliated himself in his quest for knowledge nor has he gone around cities like other preachers have. He has never sent a note asking something from others and all his affairs are running smoothly:

وَمَنْ  
يَتَّقِ اللَّهَ يَجْعَلْ لَهُ مَخْرَجًا ۖ وَيَرْزُقْهُ مِنْ حَيْثُ لَا يَحْتَسِبُ

For him who fears Allāh, He shall make a way out and provide for Him from places he could not expect.

[*Sūrah at-Talāq* : 2-3]

---

=  
the stain of Sacred Knowledge is covetousness.” How excellent are the words of al-Imam al-Khaṭṭābī about al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī (*al-Uṣūl*, p. 235): “Who will do the job today like al-Hasan with his sincerity of advice and moving admonishment? May Allāh rectify us and our rulers, for they are corrupt because of our sins.”

<sup>86</sup> Al-Khaṭṭābī related from al-Shāfi‘i with a ṣaḥīḥ chain (*al-Faqīḥ wa al-Mutaḥaqqiq*, 2/94): ‘A student of Sacred Knowledge needs three qualities: long life, free hands, and intelligence.’ Al-Khaṭṭābī al-Baḡhdādi said: “What he means with long life is continuous dedication to knowledge. What he intends with free hands is that the students does not busy himself with a profession to earn money. If he makes himself content with what he has, he will not need most of these earnings. If Allāh Most High has given him intelligence, it is a sign of his happiness and quick achievement of his objectives.”



## CHAPTER ELEVEN

### True Fear of Allāh Results in all Good

**M**Y SON, WHEN FEAR OF ALLĀH IS REAL, you shall see all good. A person who truly fears his Lord does not care about others and does not put himself in a position where his religion is at risk. Whoever takes care of Allāh's limits shall be taken care of by Him. Allāh's messenger (ﷺ) said to Ibn 'Abbās: "Safeguard Allāh and He will safeguard you. Safeguard Allāh and you will find Him in front of you."<sup>87</sup>

---

<sup>87</sup> Ṣaḥīḥ: Aḥmad, 1/293, 303, 307, al-Tirmidhī, 2516. Al-Tirmidhī said: 'A *ḥasan ṣaḥīḥ* narration' and it is as he said. It was authenticated by al-Albānī (*Takbrīj al-Sunnab li Ibn Abi 'Asim*, #316-317-318). The ḥadīth has many routes. Al-Hāfiẓ Ibn Rajab has dedicated a great book to this ḥadīth called *Nūru'l-Iqtibās fi Mishkāt Wasīyyah al-Nabī li'bn 'Abbās*. cf the English translation of the Legacy of the Prophet (ﷺ) - An explanation to the Advice given to ibn 'Abbās [trans. Abu Rumaysah, Dār as-Sunnah, 1429/2009]. Al-Hāfiẓ Ibn al-Jawzī said (*Said al-Khātir*): "I pondered over this ḥadīth but it confounded me and I almost felt helpless in solving it." Then he said: "So unfortunate indeed is the ignorance concerning this ḥadīth and the weak understanding of what it means." So do refer to its explanation as it contains great exhortation and general principles of Islām that are among the most important and highly deemed issues of our religion.

Do not forget, my son, that it was the good deeds that Yūnus had in store that saved him from hardship. Allāh Mighty and Sublime says:

فَلَوْلَا أَنَّهُ  
كَانَ مِنَ الْمُسَبِّحِينَ ﴿١٤٣﴾ لَلَّيْتُ فِي بَطْنِهِ إِلَى يَوْمِ يُبْعَثُونَ ﴿١٤٤﴾

Had he not been of them who glorify Allāh, he would have remained inside its belly till the day they will be resurrected.

[*Al-Saffāt* : 143-144]

It was also the evil deeds that Fir'aun had stored for himself that rendered him unable to find an escape when disaster befell him. He was told:

ءَأَلْتَنَ وَقَدْ عَصَيْتَ قَبْلُ

Is it now you believe while having disobeyed before.

[*Yūnus* : 91]

So store good deeds arising from *taqwā* for yourself and you shall see the results.

It was reported in a ḥadīth that the Prophet (ﷺ) said: "There is no youth who fears Allāh in his youth except that Allāh raises him in status when he is old."<sup>88</sup>

Allāh Most High says:

---

<sup>88</sup> Refer to: *Ḥilyatu'l-Anbiyā'*, 4/139.

وَلَمَّا بَلَغَ

أَشَدَّهُ ۖ وَأَتَيْنَاهُ حُكْمًا وَعِلْمًا وَكَذَلِكَ نَجْزِي الْمُحْسِنِينَ ﴿٢٢﴾

And when he attained manhood, We gave him wisdom and knowledge. Thus We reward the doers of good.

[Yūṣuf : 22]

And

إِنَّهُ ۖ مَنْ يَتَّقِ وَيَصْبِرْ فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يُضِيعُ أَجْرَ

الْمُحْسِنِينَ ﴿٩٠﴾

Truly, he who fears Allāh and has patience, then surely, Allāh does not let the reward of the good doers be lost.

[Yūṣuf : 90]

Know that the best actions you can store is lowering your gaze from the forbidden, not speaking without need, staying away from punishable deeds and preferring Him, Glorious is He, over your soul's desire. You are well aware of the ḥadīth of the three who entered the cave and then the rock blocked its entrance. One of them said: "O Allāh, I had my parents and children. I used to stand by my parents with milk and let them drink from it before my kids. If I did that for Your sake, help us now." One third of the rock moved away. The second one said: "Allāh, I hired a worker who wasn't pleased with his salary, so I made business with it. Then, one day he came to me and said: 'Will you not fear Allāh and give me my salary?' so I said: 'Go to those cows and the people who look after them and take them.' If I did that for Your sake, help us now." Another third of the rock moved away. The

third one said: “Allāh, I was in love with a cousin of mine but when I approached her she said: ‘Fear Allāh and do not break the seal without right,’ so I got up, off her. If I did that for Your sake, help us now.” The whole rock was lifted and they were able to escape.”<sup>89</sup>

Somebody had seen Sufyān al-Thaurī<sup>90</sup> in his dream and he was asked: “What did Allāh do to you?” He replied: “I had only been put into the grave and there I was, in front of Lord of the Worlds. I entered and straight away met someone who said: ‘Sufyan?’ I said: [‘Yes, I am] Sufyan.’ He said: ‘Do you remember a day you preferred Allāh over your desires?’ I said: ‘Yes’ [upon answering] I was immediately served with big food plates from Paradise”

---

<sup>89</sup> Al-Bukhārī: *Kitāb al-Ijāra*, Chapter: “Who hires a worker who then leaves his salary (2272)”, Muslim: *Kitāb al-Dhikri wa al-Du‘ā wa al-Taubah wa al-Istighfār*, Chapter: “The story of the three in the cave and intercession through righteous deed”, (2743, 100), from the ḥadīth of Ibn ‘Umar.

<sup>90</sup> Sufyān ibn Sa‘īd ibn Masrūq al-Thaurī Abū ‘Abd Allāh al-Kufī: The trustworthy Ḥāfiẓ, jurist, worshipper, Imam and proof (d. 261). He was the most ascetic person of his time to the extent that he would deprive himself of any worldly matters in his gatherings. It is said that no-one in his time feared Allāh like he did nor did anybody have his reverence of Allāh. Al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī said (*Tathkīrat al-Ḥuffāẓ*, 1/206): ‘The virtues of this Imām are mentioned in a full volume by Ibn al-Jawzī. I have abridged them and mentioned a fair share in my book *al-Tārikh*.’ The biography of this esteemed Imām can be found in *al-Hilya*, 6/356-7/144, in approximately 180 pages, *Siyar al-A‘lām al-Nabulā*, 7/229, and *Tārikh Baghdād*, 9/151-174.

## CHAPTER TWELVE

# The Lives of Our Pious Predecessors

**Y**OU SHOULD AIM TO BE PERFECT and as motivated as man can be, as many people are restricting themselves either to isolation from worldly matters or studying Sacred Knowledge, and only very few combine complete knowledge with complete action. I have acquainted myself with the lives of the Tabi'un and those after them and found the most complete of them to be four: Sa'īd ibn al-Musayyib,<sup>91</sup> al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī, Sufyān al-Thaurī and Aḥmad ibn Ḥanbal<sup>92</sup> may

---

<sup>91</sup> Sa'īd ibn al-Musayyib Abū Muḥammad al-Qurashī al-Makhzūmī: The great Imam and scholar of Madīnah and the best of the Tabi'īn in his time (d. 73). Al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī said (*al-Sīyar*, 4/219): 'He had outstanding knowledge and application of it.' For his biography, refer to: *Hīyatū'l-Auliyyā'*, 2/161, *Sīyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 4/217, 246, *Tathkirat al-Huffāẓ*, 1/51, Ibn Sa'd: *al-Tabaqāt* 5/119. Ibn al-Jawzī has dedicated a two volume book for his life and virtues as mentioned in *Sīyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 21/369, and *al-Dhayl*, 1/418.

<sup>92</sup> Imam Aḥmad ibn Ḥanbal: The Rabbānī Imām, al-Ṣiddīqī The Second, the firm bearer of tribulations. He was put to test in the days of Caliph al-Ma'mun concerning the calamity of Qur'ān's creation. He stood firm and did not answer the way he was told to, and by this earned a high position in this world and the Hereafter. Ibn al-Jawzī has dedicated a volume to his life and virtues, so refer to it.

Allāh be pleased with them. These were only men but they had high ambitions and determination which we are lacking. Many of our predecessors were highly motivated, and if you wish to learn about them just read through *Ṣifat al-Ṣafwa*.<sup>93</sup> You can ponder over the lives of Saʿīd, al-Ḥasan, Sufyān and Aḥmad<sup>94</sup> if you wish as I have dedicated a whole book for each one of them.

---

<sup>93</sup> This book has been printed: First volume: *Matbaʿa al-Asīl* of Ḥalab (1389 ah), second volume: *Matbaʿa al-Nabḍa al-Jadīda* of Egypt (1390 AH), third volume: *Matbaʿa Wikālat al-Suḥuf* of Egypt (1393 AH), volume four: *Matbaʿa Dār al-Shaʿb* of Egypt (1393 AH).

<sup>94</sup> In his explanation of Abū al-Dardā's ḥadīth "Who takes a path, seeking knowledge on it" (p. 52, 53), Al-Ḥāfiẓ Ibn Rajab described them as 'The Rabbānī scholars, the scholars of Afterlife.'

## CHAPTER THIRTEEN

# Memorisation is Your Actual Capital

**M**Y SON, you are aware that I have written a hundred books<sup>95</sup> and from amongst them is *al-Tafsīr al-Kabīr* which consists of twenty volumes<sup>96</sup>, *al-Tārikh* which is twenty volumes as well. The rest of them are big and small, some five volumes, some four, some three, some two, and some more or less. By authoring these books I have left you in no need of

---

<sup>95</sup> The author is obviously talking about the amount he had written at that time, as the number of his works is greater than that. In fact, Shaikh al-Islām Ibn Taymiyyah counted them to be over 1000. Al-Dhahabī said: 'I do not know a scholar who has written what this man has.' You can refer to the titles of these books in *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā*' and *Thail Tabaqāt al-Hanabila*. Teacher 'Abd al-Hamīd al-'Alujī has written a book called *Mu'allafāt* Ibn al-Jawzī which was printed by Dar al-Jumhuriyya, Baghdād (1395 AH). Refer to that while keeping in mind that many books were printed after this book. May Allāh, Most High, give us success in bringing out this mighty legacy.

<sup>96</sup> Al-Dhahabī said (*al-Siyar*, 21/368): 'In *tafsīr* he authored the large al-Mughnī and then abridged it to four volumes and entitled it *Zād al-Masīr*.' Ibn Rajab said (*Thail Tabaqāt al-Hanabila*, 1/416): 'Al-Mughnī, the *tafsīr*, consists of 81 parts, and *Zād al-Masīr* fi *Ilm al-Tafsīr* of four parts.' The latter has been printed by *al-Maktab al-Islāmi* (1364 AH) in nine parts with the verification of Zuhayr al-Shāwish.

borrowing books or focusing on writing them yourself. Therefore, you should focus on memorising, for memorisation is your main capital and using what you have memorised is your profit. Sincerely seek refuge in the Truth (Allāh) in both affairs and stay well within His boundaries. Allāh says:

إِن نَّصُرُوا اللَّهَ يَنْصُرْكُمْ

If you support Allāh, He will support you.

[*Muhammad* : 7]

And:

فَاذْكُرُونِي أَذْكَرْكُمْ

Remember Me and I shall remember you.

[*al-Baqarah* : 152]

And:

وَأَوْفُوا بِعَهْدِي أُوفِ بِعَهْدِكُمْ

Fulfill My covenant and I shall fulfill yours.

[*al-Baqarah* : 40]

Beware of just having theoretical knowledge without putting it into action, for those who accompany the rulers and associate with worldly people have turned their backs to enacting their knowledge which in turn has deprived them of the blessings and benefit it can bring.



## CHAPTER FOURTEEN

# Knowledge and Action are Intertwined

**B**E CAREFUL OF BUSYING YOURSELF with mere worship with no learning, as many ascetics and Sūfis have gone astray due to acting without knowledge.<sup>97</sup>

Cover yourself with the two beautiful garments that will not make you famous among the material folks with their classiness, nor famous among the ascetics with their ruggedness. Take your-

---

<sup>97</sup> Ibn 'Abd al-Barr (*Jāmi' Bayān al-'Ilm*, p. 54), al-Khaṭīb (*al-Faqīh wa al-Mutafaqqih*, 1/19) and Ibn Abī Shaibah (*al-Musannaf*, 13/470) related that 'Umar ibn 'Abd al-'Azīz said: "Who acts without knowledge harms more than benefits." Ibn 'Abd al-Barr (p. 215), Ibn Abī Shaibah (13/499) related also that al-Ḥasan al-Baṣṭī said: "Seek knowledge in a way that does not harm your worship, and worship in a way that does not harm your knowledge. Who acts without knowledge harms more than benefits." The great scholar Ibn al-Qayyim said (*Miftāḥ Dār al-Sa'ada*, 1/ 82, 83): "A person who acts without knowledge is like someone who travels without a guide, and it is known that a person like this will more likely be destroyed than saved. In any case, even if we'd suppose that he would survive by agreement, his deed would never be considered as something praiseworthy. All men of intellect agree that the case is quite contrary. Shaikh al-Islam Ibn Taimiyyah used to say: "Who abandons the guide strays from the path, and non can be guided with other than that which the Messenger came with."

self to account for every glance, word and step you take as you will be asked about all of it.

Those who hear you speak will benefit from your knowledge according to how much you yourself benefit from it. When a preacher doesn't apply his knowledge his exhortation will flow off the hearts' surface like water flows off a rock.<sup>98</sup>

So, do not ever preach without an intention and do not walk without an intention. Don't even swallow a bite without an intention.<sup>99</sup> All of this will become clear to you once you get acquainted with the characteristics of our predecessors.

---

<sup>98</sup> Al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādī related (*Iqtidā' al-'Ilm al-'Amal*, p. 97) by way of Ja'far from Malik who said: "I read the following from the Torah: 'When a scholar does not act upon his knowledge, his admonishment flows off peoples' hearts like a drop of water flows off a rock'" Ibn al-Jawzī said (*al-Yawāqūt al-Jawziyyah*, p. 95): "Knowledge and action are twins whose mother is high motivation."

<sup>99</sup> You can read about intention and its importance: *Jami' 'Ulum wa al-Hikam*, p. 20, 21.

## CHAPTER FIFTEEN

### Some Excellent Books to Read

**Y**OU SHOULD READ *Minhāj al-Muridīn*<sup>100</sup> as it can teach you the correct way of dealing with your Lord. Make it your companion and teacher. Also, read through *Ṣaid al-Khātir*<sup>101</sup> as it mentions occurrences that help you in rectifying your

---

<sup>100</sup> Ibn al-Jawzī has authored a book on how to deal with one's Lord and his servants called *Minhāj al-Qāsidīn* which he abridged from *Ihyā' 'Ulūm al-Dīn*. He said in *al-Qisās wa al-Muthakkirin* that the book discusses these methodologies, but it hasn't been printed to this day. Its manuscripts are located in Paris (1295), Turkey (al-Fāṭih, 2872) and al-Zahirīyah (24-*Tasawwuf*). An abridgment of the book has been printed, however, I do not know whether *Minhāj al-Qāsidīn* and *Minhāj al-Muridīn* are one and the same or not. Allāh really knows best. Al-Hāfiz al-Dhabābī mentioned *Minhāj al-Qāsidīn* being two volumes whilst Ibn Rajab said it consists of four.

<sup>101</sup> *Ṣaid al-Khātir* (Grasped Thoughts) is one of al-Hāfiz Ibn al-Jawzī's books which is a record of grasped thoughts, affairs and ideas he had been thinking about that should really have been memorised so they would not be forgotten as mentioned in the preface of the book. According to al-Dhabābī, the book is four volumes and Ibn Rajab mentions that it consists of 65 parts. It has been printed by *Dar al-Kutub al-Hadīthīyah* with the verification of Muḥammad Ghazālī, *Maktaba al-Kulliyat al-Azharīyah* with verification by 'Abd al-Qādir =

worldly and religious affairs. Memorise *Jannat al-Nadhar*<sup>102</sup> as it gives you a sufficient grasp of jurisprudence. Spend time reading *al-Hadā'iq*<sup>103</sup> and it apprise you of most of the ḥadīth and by reading *al-Kashf* you will know the hidden benefits of narrations in Bukhari and Muslim.<sup>104</sup> Do not busy yourself with Qur'ānic commentaries written by non-Arabs, and in truth, after *al-Mughnī* and *Zād al-Masīr* you don't need any other commentaries at all.<sup>105</sup> As for works on exhortation, I have collected for you what completely suffice you.

---

=  
Aḥmad 'Aṭā who made some faulty statements in it that do not suite al-Hāfiẓ Ibn al-Jawzī. The book has also been printed in Beirut with the verification of Sayyid al-Jāmili who wrote some incorrect comments and should have not have dared to write them on the book. May Allāh pardon us all. The book has also been printed by *Dar al-Fikr*, Damascus, with verification by 'Alī and Nāji al-Tantāwī, and there are also other prints.

<sup>102</sup> Al-Hāfiẓ Ibn Rajab mentioned it in *Dhail Tabaqāt al-Hanabila*, 1/418, and said: 'It is *al-Ta'qlīqa al-Wusta*.'

<sup>103</sup> Al-Dhahabī said that it consists of two volumes and Ibn Rajab said it is 34 parts. In the end of *al-Qiṣāṣ wa al-Muthakkirin*, p. 372, Ibn al-Jawzī said that this book is *Ghāyat al-Wā'iz*. It has manuscripts in *Dar al-Kutub al-Misriyyah*.

<sup>104</sup> Al-Hāfiẓ Ibn Rajab mentioned it in *al-Tha'il*, 1/417, and called it *al-Kashf fi Mushkil al-Ṣaḥīḥain* (four volumes).

<sup>105</sup> Al-Hāfiẓ Ibn al-Jawzī said (*al-Qiṣāṣ wa al-Muthakkirin*, p. 371, 372): 'I have gathered books on tools of sermon giving, the likes of which non has authored before me. In the field of Qur'ānic exegesis polished from errors and void of fabricated ḥadīths I have *Zād al-Masīr fi 'Ilm al-Tafsīr* and *al-Mughnī* which is the bigger of the two. As for book of exhortation, they are too many to mention, so I'll suffice with a few: *Tāḥṣirat al-Mubtadī'*, *Kanz al-Muthakkir*, *al-Lu'lu'*, *al-Malīb*, *al-Mudīsh*, *al-Mulabbih*, *Sabānājīd*, *Nasīm al-Riyād* and *al-Muntakhab*. Some of these books suffice a sermon giver for the rest of his life, leaving him no need for rhetorical flourishes written by non-Arabs that are mostly senseless lies anyway.'

## CHAPTER SIXTEEN

# The Characteristics of a Beneficial Preacher

**M**INGLE WITH OTHERS IN A GOOD way but at the same time be strictly isolated because isolation safeguards you from having to deal with bad people and preserves your dignity. A preacher, in particular, should not be seen behaving like common folks or spending time in the market place or laughing out loud. This is to make sure that people have a good opinion about him<sup>106</sup> and lend an ear to him when he

---

<sup>106</sup> Ibn al-Jawzī said (*al-Ṣaid*, p. 232): “I am unable to figure delight, dignity, honor, rest or well being that is better for a scholar than that attained in isolation. Through it he achieves physical and religious well being and earns a great status with Allāh and rest of the creation as well. This is because people do not appreciate a person who mingles with them, and that’s why it is staying away from people that makes our Caliphs so venerated among the people. If the laypeople see a scholar giving leeway in some permissible matter their appreciation for him becomes less, so he must protect his knowledge and make them realize its value. Some of our predecessors have said: ‘We used to joke around and laugh, but once people began to follow our example I realized we shouldn’t do that.’ Sufyān al-Thaurī said: ‘Learn this knowledge and keep silent. Do not mix it with joking around lest the hearts spit it out.’”

speaks. However, if you have no choice but to mix with them, control your temper and forbear others because once you see their true mannerisms, you will be unable to mix with them.

## CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

### Fulfilling the Rights of Others

**G**IVE EVERYBODY THEIR DUE RIGHTS - wives, children and relatives. Observe every hour in your life and see how you spend it. Try not to use it except in the most honorable way possible. Do not waste your self and get in the habit of doing the best things and send something to the grave's chest that will make you rejoice when you get there:

O you who ran after the material life  
Deluded by his hopes so long

Death will come to you suddenly  
And the grave is the chest of deeds

Pay attention to the consequences of things as that will make patience with things you desire and dislike easy for you. If you sometimes find yourself neglectful of your duties, take your soul to the graveyards and remind it of the nearness of its departure from this world.

Plan your affairs - and Allāh is the true planner - and spend but

not foolishly lest you become in need of others. Taking care of one's wealth is a part of this religion, and "it is better to leave something for your inheritors than leaving them in need of others."<sup>107</sup>

---

<sup>107</sup> A ḥadīth says: "For you to leave your heirs wealthy is better than leaving them poor and begging from people." Related by al-Bukhārī, 2742, Muslim, 1628, 75, from Sa'd ibn Abi Waqqāṣ.



## CHAPTER EIGHTEEN

### A Beautiful Closure

**O** MY SON, know that we come from the sons of Abū Bakr *al-Ṣiddīq*<sup>108</sup> and our father is al-Qāsim Muḥammad ibn 'Abdu'l-Raḥmān ibn Abū Bakr ibn Muḥammad ibn Abū Bakr (*radīy>Allāhu 'anhu*)<sup>109</sup> whose life has been critically documented in *Ṣifat al-Ṣafwa*. After him, our forefathers were businessmen so among the later family there hasn't been anyone who has

---

<sup>108</sup> His lineage is as follows: Abū'l-Faraj 'Abdu'l-Raḥmān ibn 'Alī ibn Muḥammad ibn 'Alī ibn 'Ubayd Allāh ibn 'Abdullāh ibn Ḥamadi ibn Aḥmad ibn Muḥammad ibn Jā'far ibn 'Abdullāh ibn al-Qāsim ibn al-Naḍr ibn al-Qāsim ibn Muḥammad ibn 'Abdullāh ibn al-Faqih 'Abdu'l-Raḥmān ibn al-Faqih al-Qāsim ibn Muḥammad son of Allāh's Messengers (ﷺ) caliph Abū Bakr *al-Ṣiddīq* al-Qurashī al-Taimī al-Bakrī al-Baghdādī.

<sup>109</sup> The exemplary Imam, the Ḥāfiẓ and proof, the scholar of his time in Madīnah with Sālim and 'Ikrima, Abu Muḥammad and Abū 'Abdu'l-Raḥmān al-Qurashī. He was born during the caliphate of 'Alī (*radīy>Allāhu 'anhu*) and nurtured on the lap of his aunt, the mother of the believers 'Ā'ishah (*radīy>Allāhu 'anhu*) from whom he learned and reported a lot. He died in year 7 AH. For his biography, refer to: Ibn Sa'd: *al-Ṭabaqāt*, 5/187, Khalīfah: *al-Ṭabaqāt*, 344, *Ḥīyahat'l-Anbiyā'*, 2/183, *Ṭaḥṭīb al-Asma'i wa al-Lughāt*, 2/55, *Ṭaḥkīrat al-Huffāẓ*, 1/96, *al-'Ibar*, 1/132, *Sīyar al-'Ālām al-Nubulā'*, 5/54, *Shatharāt al-Dhabab*, 1/135, *Ṣifat al-Ṣafwa*, 2/88.

been given motivation to pursue Sacred Knowledge except me. Now your turn has come. Strive hard and do not fall short of my expectations of you for you. I have trusted your affair to Allāh, Glorious and Most High, and He alone I ask to grant you success in knowledge and its application.

This is what I was able to admonish you with, and with Allāh, Most High and Exalted, is all might and power.

Ever increasing praise be to Allāh, and may His blessings and peace be upon our Leader Muḥammad, as well as his Family and Companions.<sup>110</sup>

---

<sup>110</sup> We ask Allāh to give us and rest of the Muslims benefit through this exhortation. May He forgive its writer and the one it was written to along with all those who read it and spread it. May he forgive the commentator and all those who call others to read it and encourage them to act upon its message. This commentary was finished on the blessed day of Friday in 1409 AH in the city of al-Isma'iliyya. Praise be to Allāh, by whose blessing all good deeds come to be. May Allāh send praises on Muḥammad (ﷺ) and his followers.

Abū al-Ḥārith Ashraf ibn 'Abd al-Maqsūd ibn 'Abdu'l-Raḥīm, May Allāh forgive him, his parents and rest of the Muslims.



سُرُورُ الْعُرُوفِ النَّصِيحِ وَالْوَصَايَا

لفئة الكبد إلى

# نصيحة الولد

أهتام السافظ

أبو الفرج بن الجوزي

نصح بها ولده أبا الفارح بن عبد العزيز على  
المولود سنة ٥٥١ هـ والمنوفى ٦٢٠ هـ

مُقَدِّمَةُ الْمُصَنِّفِ  
 فِي السَّبَبِ الْبَاعِثِ عَلَى كِتَابَةِ الْوَصِيَّةِ  
 بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ  
 وَبِهِ نَسْتَعِينُ

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي أَنْشَأَ الْأَبَ الْأَكْبَرَ مِنْ تُرَابٍ ، وَأَخْرَجَ ذُرِّيَّتَهُ مِنَ التُّرَائِبِ  
 وَالْأَصْلَابِ ، وَعَضَدَ الْعَشَائِرَ بِالْقَرَابَةِ وَالْأَنْسَابِ ، وَأَنْعَمَ عَلَيَّ بِالْعِلْمِ  
 وَعِرْفَانِ الصَّوَابِ ، وَأَحْسَنَ تَرْبِيَّتِي فِي الصَّبِيِّ وَحَفَظَنِي فِي الشَّبَابِ ،  
 وَرَزَقَنِي ذُرِّيَّةً أَرْجُو بوجودهم وفور الثواب ﴿ رَبِّ اجْعَلْنِي مُقِيمَ الصَّلَاةِ  
 وَمِنْ ذُرِّيَّتِي رَبَّنَا وَتَقَبَّلْ دُعَاءَنَا ﴾ رَبَّنَا اغْفِرْ لِي وَلِوَالِدَيَّ وَلِلْمُؤْمِنِينَ يَوْمَ  
 يَقُومُ الْحِسَابُ ﴿ [ إبراهيم : ٤٠ ، ٤١ ]

أما بعد : فَأُثْنِي لِمَا عَرَفْتُ شَرَفَ النِّكَاحِ وَطَلَبَ الْأَوْلَادِ <sup>(١)</sup> ، خَتَمْتُ  
 خَتْمَةً <sup>(٢)</sup> ، وَسَأَلْتُ اللَّهَ تَعَالَى أَنْ يَرْزُقَنِي عَشْرَةَ أَوْلَادٍ ، فَرَزَقَنِيهِمْ ، فَكَانُوا

(١) ذكر الذهبي في سير أعلام النبلاء ( ٢١ / ٣٧٥ ) مصنفاً لابن الجوزي  
 أسماء « الحث على طلب الولد » نسأل الله الذرية الصالحة .

(٢) فائدة : اعلم رحماني الله وإياك أن الدعاء عند ختم القرآن كان من فعل  
 سلفنا الصالح رضوان الله عليهم فمن ذلك ما جاء عن أنس رضي الله عنه : « أَنَّهُ  
 كَانَ إِذَا خَتَمَ الْقُرْآنَ جَمَعَ وَلَدَهُ وَأَهْلَ بَيْتِهِ فَدَعَا لَهُمْ » رواه الدارمي ( ٣٤٧٤ )  
 ورواه ابن أبي داود بإسنادين صحيحين كما قال الإمام التورع النووي في الأذكار =

خمسة ذكور وخمس إناث ، فمات من الإناث اثنتان ومن الذكور أربعة<sup>(١)</sup> ، فلم يبق من الذكور سوى ولدى أبي القاسم<sup>(٢)</sup> ، فسألت الله تعالى أن يجعل فيه الخلف الصالح ، وأن يبلغ به المني والمناجح ، ثم رأيت منه نوع ثوانٍ عن الجد في طلب العلم ، فكتبت له هذه الرسالة

=ص ( ١٩١ ) وقال الحافظ ابن حجر : ( هذا موقوف صحيح ) كما في الفتوحات الربانية ( ٣ / ٣٤٤ ) .

(١) وهنا اشكالان يجب توضيحها وهما :

الأول : — أن الحافظ ابن الجوزي رحمه الله خلّف ولدين بعده وهما يوسف محيي الدين المولود سنة ٥٨٠ هـ والمتوفى سنة ٦٥٦ هـ مقتولاً قتل هولاءكو عند احتلاله بغداد وتدميره لها والثاني أبو القاسم علي المولود سنة ٥٥١ هـ والمتوفى سنة ٦٣٠ هـ والذي عناه ابن الجوزي بهذه النصيحة .

الثاني : — أن ابن الجوزي أنجب أكثر من خمس بنات فإن سبطه أبا المظفر ذكر له ست بنات لاختصاصاً كما تقدم في المقدمة .

ويمكن توجيه هذين الإشكاليين من خلال تواريخ الوفاة : فنقول : إن الحال هذه التي ذكرها ابن الجوزي كانت حال كتابته هذه الرسالة وأن هذا قبل ولادة ابنه يوسف محيي الدين سنة ٥٨٠ هـ وبعد وفاة ولده الأكبر أبي بكر عبد العزيز المتوفى سنة ٥٥٤ هـ ولعل له أولاداً آخرين غير يوسف هذا .

وأيضاً يرتفع بهذا الإشكال الثاني فيقال فيه مثلما قيل في الأول أنه أنجب بنتاً أخرى بعد كتابة هذه الرسالة .

(٢) هو أبو القاسم بدر الدين علي التأسخ تقدمت ترجمته وقد كان عاقاً لوالده وكانت طريقته غير مرضية وهجره أبوه سنين وتوفى سنة ٦٣٠ هـ راجع ترجمته في مقدمة هذا الكتاب .

أَحْتَهُ بِهَا وَأَحْرَكَهُ عَلَى سَلُوكِ طَرِيقِي فِي كَسْبِ الْعِلْمِ ، وَأَدَّهُ عَلَى الْإِلْتِجَاءِ  
إِلَى الْمَوْفِقِ سُبْحَانَهُ وَتَعَالَى ، مَعَ عِلْمِي بِأَنَّهُ لَا خَازِلَ لِمَنْ وَفَّقَ ، وَلَا مَرشِدَ  
لِمَنْ أَضَلَّ ، لَكِن قَدْ قَالَ تَعَالَى : ﴿ وَتَوَاصَوْا بِالْحَقِّ وَتَوَاصَوْا  
بِالصَّبْرِ ﴾ [المصر : ٤] ، وَقَالَ : ﴿ فَذَكِّرْ إِنْ نَفَعَتِ الذِّكْرَى ﴾ [الأعلى : ٩] .  
وَلَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ الْعَلِيِّ الْعَظِيمِ .

\* \* \*

## فصل

### تَرْغِيبٌ وَتَرْهِيْبٌ بَيْنَ يَدَيِ هَذِهِ الْوَصِيَّةِ النَّافِعَةِ

اعلم يا بنى - وفقك الله للصواب - أنه لم يتميز الآدمى بالعقل إلا ليعمل بمقتضاه ، فاستحضر عقلك ، وأعمل فكرك ، واخُل بنفسك ، تعلم بالدليل أنك مخلوق مكلف ، وأن عليك فرائض أنت مُطالب بها ، وأن الملكين يُخصميان ألفاظك ونظراتك ، وأن أنفاس الحيّ حُطّاه إلى أجله ، ومقدار اللَّبث في الدنيا قليل ، والحبس في القبور طويل ، والعذاب على موافقة الهوى وبيل .

فأين لذة أمس ؟ رحلت وأبقت ندماً .

وأين شهوة النفس ؟ كم نكست رأساً ، وأزلت قدماً .

وما سَعَدَ مَنْ سَعَدَ إلا بخلاف هواه ، ولا شقى من شقى إلا بإيثار دنياه ، فاعتبر بمن مضى من الملوك والزهاد أين لذة هؤلاء ، وأين تعب أولئك ؟ .

بقى الثواب الجزيل والذكر الجميل للصالحين ، والقالة القبيحة



والعقاب الويل للعاصين ؛ وكأئنه مَا جَاع مَنْ جَاع وَلَا شَبِعَ مَنْ شَبِعَ ،  
والكسل عن الفضائل بمس الرفيق ، وحب الراحة يورث من الندم ما يُرْبَى  
على كل لَذَّةٍ ، فانتبه واتعب لنفسك .

واعلم أن أداء الفرائض واجتناب المحارم لأزِمَ ، فمتى تَعَدَّى الإنسان  
فالنار النار .

ثم اعلم أن طلب الفضائل نهاية مراد المجتهدين ، ثم الفضائل  
تتفاوت ، فمن الناس من يرى الفضائل الزهد في الدنيا ، ومنهم من يراها  
التشغل بالتعب ، وعلى الحقيقة فليست الفضائل الكاملة إلا الجمع بين  
العلم والعمل ، فإذا حَصَلَ رفعا صاحبهما إلى تحقيق معرفة الخالق سبحانه  
وتعالى ، وَحَرَكَاهُ إِلَى محبته وخشيته والشوق إليه ، فتلك الغاية  
المقصودة ، وعلى قدر أهل العزم تأتي العزائم ، وليس كل مُرِيدٍ مُرَادًا ،  
ولا كُلِّ طَالِبٍ وَاجِدًا ، ولكن على العبد الاجتهاد ، « وَكُلُّ مِهْسِرٍ لِمَا  
مُحَلِّقٍ لَهُ » (١) والله المستعان .

\* \* \*

(١) هذه الجملة لفظ حديث صحيح ثابت عن النبي ﷺ من حديث علي بن  
أبي طالب رضي الله عنه أخرجه البخارى : كتاب الجنائز (١٣٦٢) : باب موعظة  
المحدث عند القبر وقعود أصحابه حوله . (١٣٦٢) .

ومسلم : كتاب القدر : باب كيفية خلق آدمي . (٢٦٤٧) (٦) .

# فصل

## الواجبات والفضائل والهمة العالية

وأول ما ينبغي النظر فيه : معرفة الله تعالى بالدليل ، ومعلوم أن من رأى السماء مرفوعة ، والأرض موضوعة ، وشاهد الأبنية المحكمة خصوصاً فى جسد نفسه ، عَلِمَ أَنَّهُ لا بد للصنعة من صانع ، وللمبنى من باني .

ثم يتأمل دليل صدق الرسول ﷺ إليه ، وأكبر الدلائل القرآن ، الذى أعجز الخلق أن يأتوا بسورة من مثله ، فإذا ثبت عنده وجود الخالق جل وعلا وصدق الرسول ﷺ ، وَجَبَ تَسْلِيمَ عَنَانِهِ إِلَى الشَّرْعِ ، فمتى لم يفعل ذلك على تحلل فى اعتقاده .

ثم يجب عليه أن يعرف ما يجب عليه من الوضوء والصلاة والزكاة — إن كان له مال — والحج وغير ذلك من الواجبات . فإذا عرف قدر الواجب قام به .

فينبغى لذى الهمة أن يترقى إلى الفضائل ، فيتشغل بحفظ القرآن

وتفسيره وبحديث الرسول ﷺ ، وبمعرفة سيره وسير أصحابه والعلماء بعدهم . ليتخير مرتبة الأعلى فالأعلى .

ولابد من معرفة ما يقيم به لسانه من النحو ومعرفة طرف مستعمل من اللغة .

والفقه أصل العلوم ، والتذكير حلواؤها وأعمها نفعاً ، وقد رَبَّيْتُ فِي هذه المذكورات من التصانيف ما يُغْنِي عن كل ما سبق من تصانيف القُدَمَاء وغيرها بِحَمْدِ اللَّهِ وَمَنَّهُ (١) ، فَأَغْنِيكَ عن تَطَلُّبِ الكُتُبِ وجمع الهمم للتصنيف ، وما تقف هِمَّةٌ إِلَّا لِحَسَاسِيَّتِهَا ، وَإِلَّا فَمَتَى عَلَّتِ الهممة فلا تَقَنَّعَ بالدُّونِ .

وقد عرفت بالدليل أن الهممة مولودة مع الأدمى وإنما تقصر بعض الهمم في بعض الأوقات فإذا حثت سارت . ومتى رأيت في نفسك عجزاً فسل المنعم ، أو كسلاً فالجأ إلى الموفق ، فلن تنال خيراً إلا بطاعته ، ولا يفوتك خير إلا بمعصيته ، فَمَنْ الذي أقبل عليه فلم ير كل مُراد ؟ وَمَنْ الذي أعرض عنه فمضى بفائدة ؟ أو حظى بغرض من أغراضه ؟ أو مَا سَمِعْتَ قول الشاعر (٢) :

(١) قال الحافظ الذهبي : « وما علمت أحداً من العلماء صنّف ما صنّف هذا الرجل » تذكره الحافظ ( ١٣٤٤ ) .

(٢) الأبيات في سير أعلام النبلاء ( ٢١ / ٥٨ ) منسوبة للمرتضى والد الإمام =

وَاللّٰهُ مَا جِئْتُمْ زَائِرًا      إِلَّا وَجَدْتُمُ الْأَرْضَ تُطْوَى لِي  
وَلَا تَبِيتُ الْعِزَمَ عَنْ بَابِكُمْ      إِلَّا تَعَثَّرْتُ بِأَذْيَالِي

\* \* \*

---

= أبى الفضائل محمد بن عبدالله بن القاسم بن مظفر الشافعي مع ابدال كلمة  
( والله ) بـ ( يأليل ) .

## فصل وَانْقُوا لِلَّهِ وَيَعْلَمِ كُؤَالله

وانظر يا بُنَيَّ : إلى نفسك عند الحدود ، فتلمح كيف حَفِظَكَ لها ، فإنه مَنْ رَاعَى رُوعِي ، ومن أَهْمَلَ تُرِكَ . وإنِّي لأذكر لك بعض أحوالي لعلك تُنْظِرُ إلى اجْتِهَادِي وتَسْأَلُ الموفق لي : فَإِنَّ أَكْثَرَ الإِنْعَامِ عَلَيَّ لم يكن بِكَسْبِي ، وإنَّمَا هو من تَدْبِيرِ اللطيف بي .

○ فَإِنِّي أَذْكَرُ نَفْسِي ولي همة عالية <sup>(١)</sup> وأنا في المكتب ابن سِت سنين

(١) تحدث الحافظ ابن الجوزي عن همته العالية في مواضع متفرقة من كتابه « صيد الخاطر » نقل للقارئ الكريم طرفاً منها : قال رحمه الله ( ٢٣٨ ) : « ما ابتلى الإنسان قط بأعظم من عُلُوِّ هِمَّتِهِ ، فإن من علت همته يختار المعالي ، وربما لا يساعد الزمان ، وقد تضعف الآلة ، فيبقى في عذاب . وإنِّي أُعْطِيت من عُلُوِّ الهمة طرفاً فأنا به عذاب . ولا أقول : ليته لم يكن ؛ فإنه يحلو العيش بقدر عدم العقل والعامل لا يختار زيادة اللذة بنقصان العقل ، وقال رحمه الله : ( ٢٣٩ ) « ونظرت إلى علو همتي فرأيت عجباً ، وذلك أنني أروم من العلم ما أتيقن أنني لا أصل إليه ، لا أنني أحب نيل كل العلوم على اختلاف فنونها ، وأريد استقصاء كل فن . وهذا أمر يعجز العمر عن بعضه . » وقال رحمه الله مصوراً أن هذه الهمة لازمة حال الكبر أيضاً ( ٢٥٠ ، ٢٥١ ) : « حُلِقْتُ لي همة عالية تطلب =

وأنا قرين الصبيان الكبار ، قد رُزِقْتُ عَقْلاً وافراً في الصغر يزيد على عقل الشيوخ ، فما أذكر أني لعبت في طريق مع الصبيان قط ، ولا ضحكت ضحكاً خارجاً<sup>(١)</sup> .

○ حتى أتى كنت ولى سبع سنين أو نحوها أحضر رحبة الجامع ، فلا أتخير حلقة مُشَعَّبُذ ، بل أطلب المُحَدِّث ، فيتحدث بالسير فأحفظ جميع ما أسمعه وأذهب إلى البيت فأكتبه . ولقد وفق لى شيخنا أبو الفضل ابن ناصر رحمه الله<sup>(٢)</sup> ، وكان يحملنى إلى الشيوخ فأسمعنى المسند وغيره

= الغايات . بَلَغْتُ الستين وما بلغت ما أملت ، فأخذتُ أسأل الله تطويل العمر ، وتقوية البدن ، وبلوغ الآمال ، فأنكرت على العادات وقالت : ما جرت عادة بما تطلب . فقلت : إنما أطلب من قادر على تجاوز العادات ، ا . هـ

(١) راجع تقرير هذا الكلام فى البداية والنهاية لابن كثير ( ٢٩ / ١٣ ) .  
 (٢) الإمام المحدث الحافظ ، مفيد العراق أبو الفضل محمد بن ناصر بن محمد بن على بن عم السُّلَامَى البغدادي ولد سنة ٤٦٧ هـ وتوفى سنة ٥٥١ هـ وقد انتفع الحافظ ابن الجوزى فى الحديث بملازمته لهذا الإمام كما أشار إلى ذلك الذهبى فى السير ( ٢١ / ٣٦٧ ) بل قرره الحافظ ابن الجوزى نفسه فى كتابه المنتظم ( ١٠ / ١٦٣ ) ونقله عنه الذهبى فى الميزان ( ٢٠ / ٢٦٧ ) : قال : « كان شيخنا ثقة حافظاً ضابطاً من أهل السنة لا مغمز فيه ، تولى تسميى ، سمعت بقراءته ، مسند ، أحمد والكُتُب الكبار ، وعنه أخذتُ علم الحديث ، وكان كثير الذكر ، سريع الدعة ، ا . هـ .

راجع ترجمته فى : — سير أعلام النبلاء ( ٢٠ / ٢٦٥ ) وتذكرة الحفاظ =

من الكتب الكبار ، وأنا لا أعلم ما يُراد منى ، وضبط لى مسموعاتى إلى أن بلغت فناولنى ثبتهَا ولازمتهُ ألى أن توفى رحمه الله ، فَنِلْتُ به معرفة الحديث والنقل .

○ ولقد كان الصَّيَّان ينزلون إلى دجلة ويتفرجون على الجسر وأنا فى زمن الصفر آخذ جزءاً وأقعد حجة من الناس إلى جانب الرقة فأتشاغل بالعلم <sup>(١)</sup> .

○ ثم أَلِهْتُ الزُّهد فسردت الصوم ، وتشاغلت بالتقلل من الطعام

(= ( ١٢٨٩ / ٤ ) ومناقب أحمد ( ٥٣٠ ، ٥٣١ ) ومرآة الزمان ( ١٣٨ / ٨ )  
وذيل طبقات الحنابلة ( ١ / ٢٢٥ - ٢٢٩ ) والبداية والنهاية ( ١٢ / ٢٣٣ ) .  
(١) رحم الله ابن الجوزى فقد كان مجدداً فى طلب العلم فى حال الصغر والكبر على حد سواء منكباً على تحصيله لا يضيع شيئاً من وقته يقول عن نفسه أيضاً فى كتابه صيد الخاطر ( ٢٣٥ ) : « ولقد كنت فى حلاوة طلبى للعلم ألقى من الشدائد ما هو عندى أحلى من العسل ، لأجل ما أطلب وأرجو ، كنت فى زمن الصبا آخذ معى أرغفة يابسة ، فأخرج فى طلب الحديث ، وأقعد على نهر عيسى ، فلا أقدر على أكلها إلا عند الماء ، فكُلُّما أكلتُ لقمة شربتُ عليها ، وعين همتى لا ترى إلا لذة تحصيل العلم ، فأثمر ذلك عندى أنى عرفت بكثرة سماعى لحديث رسول الله ﷺ وأحواله وآدابه وأحوال أصحابه وتابعيهم .. وأثمر ذلك عندى من المعاملة ما لا يدرى إلا بالعلم ، حتى إننى أذكر فى زمن الصبوة ووقت الغلظة والغربة قدرتى على أشياء كانت النفس تتوق إليها توقان العطشان إلى الماء الزلال ، ولم يمتنعنى عنها إلا ما أثمر عندى العلم من خوف الله عز وجل ،  
. ا . ه .

وَأَزَمْتُ نَفْسِي الصَّبْرَ فَاسْتَمَرْتُ وَشَمَرْتُ وَلازَمْتُ وَعَالَجْتُ السَّهْرَ ، وَلَمْ أَقْعَ بَفَنٍ . مِنَ الْعُلُومِ <sup>(١)</sup> ، بَلْ كُنْتُ أَسْمَعُ الْفَقْهَ وَالْوَعْظَ وَالْحَدِيثَ ، وَأَتَّبِعُ الزَّهَادَ ، ثُمَّ قَرَأْتُ اللَّغَةَ .

○ وَلَمْ أَتْرِكْ أَحَدًا مِمَّنْ يَرُوي وَيَعْظُ ، وَلَا غَرِيبًا يَقْدِمُ إِلَّا وَأَحْضَرُهُ ، وَأَتَخَيَّرُ الْفَضَائِلَ ، وَكُنْتُ إِذَا عَرِضَ لِي أَمْرَانِ أَقْدِمُ فِي أَغْلَبِ الْأَحْوَالِ حَقَّ الْحَقِّ .

فَأَحْسَنَ تَدْبِيرِي وَتَرْبِيَّتِي ، وَأَجْرَانِي عَلَى مَا هُوَ الْأَصْلَحُ لِي وَدَفَعَ عَنِّي الْأَعْدَاءَ وَالْحَسَادَ وَمَنْ يَكِيدُنِي ، وَهَيَأَ لِي أَسْبَابَ الْعِلْمِ ، وَبَعَثَ إِلَيَّ الْكُتُبَ مِنْ حَيْثُ لَا أَحْتَسِبُ ، وَرَزَقَنِي الْفَهْمَ وَسُرْعَةَ الْحِفْظِ وَالْخَطَّ وَجَوْدَةَ التَّصْنِيفِ وَلَمْ يَعْزِزْنِي شَيْئًا مِنَ الدُّنْيَا ، بَلْ سَاقَ إِلَيَّ مِنَ الرِّزْقِ مَقْدَارَ الْكِفَايَةِ وَأَزِيدَ ، وَوَضَعَ لِي مِنَ الْقَبُولِ فِي قُلُوبِ الْخَلْقِ فَوْقَ الْحَدِّ ، وَأَوْقَعَ

(١) وَقَالَ عَنِ نَفْسِهِ أَيْضًا فِي الصَّيْدِ ( ٣٧ ) : « إِنِّي رَجُلٌ حَبِيبٌ إِلَيَّ الْعِلْمُ مِنْ زَمَنِ الطُّفُولَةِ فَتَشَاغَلْتُ بِهِ ... ثُمَّ لَمْ يَحْبِبْ إِلَيَّ فَنَ وَاحِدٌ مِنْهُ ، بَلْ فَنُونُهُ كُلُّهَا ، ثُمَّ لَا تَقْتَصِرُ هِمَّتِي فِي فَنٍ عَلَى بَعْضِهِ ، بَلْ أُرُومُ اسْتِقْصَاءِهِ . وَلَقَدْ ظَلَّ يَطْلُبُ الْعِلْمَ فِي كُلِّ أَيَّامِ عَمْرِهِ حَتَّى أَنَّهُ قَبْلَ مَوْتِهِ بِمُدَّةٍ مَسِيرَةٍ قَرَأَ الْقُرْآنَ بِالرُّوَايَاتِ عَلَى ابْنِ الْبَاقِلَانِيِّ كَمَا يَذْكَرُ ذَلِكَ الْحَافِظُ الذَّهَبِيُّ عَنْهُ : « وَقَدْ قَرَأَ بِوَسْاطِهِ هُوَ ابْنُ ثَمَانِينَ سَنَةً بِالْعَشْرِ عَلَى ابْنِ الْبَاقِلَانِيِّ ، وَتَلَا مَعَهُ وَلَدَهُ يَوْسُفَ » . هـ . وَلَقَدْ أَثَرَتْ هَذِهِ النَّشْأَةُ الَّتِي أُلْهِمْتُ فِيهَا الْعِبَادَةَ مِنْ صُومٍ وَصَلَاةٍ فِي هَذَا الْإِمَامِ مِنْذُ الصَّغَرِ يَقُولُ عَنِ نَفْسِهِ ( صَيْدُ الْخَاطِرِ — ٧٨ ) : « كُنْتُ فِي بَدَايَةِ الصَّبُورَةِ قَدْ أَلْهِمْتُ طَرِيقَ الزَّهَادِ ، بِإِدَامَةِ الصُّومِ وَالصَّلَاةِ ، وَحَبِيبَتِي إِلَى الْخُلُوةِ ، فَكُنْتُ أَجِدُ قَلْبًا طَيِّبًا ، وَكَانَتْ عَيْنُ بَصِيرَتِي حَادَةً ... » . هـ .



كلامى فى نفوسهم فلا يرتابون بصحته ، وقد أسلم على يدى نحو من مائتين من أهل الذمة . ولقد تاب فى مجالسى أكثر من مائة ألف ، وقد قطعت أكثر من عشرين ألف سالف مما يتعانه الجهال <sup>(١)</sup> .

○ ولقد كنت أدور على المشايخ لسماع الحديث فينقطع نفسى من العذو لئلا أسبق ، وكنت أصبح وليس لى مأكل وأمسى وليس لى مأكل ، ما أذنتى الله لمخلوق قط . ولكنه ساق رزقى لصيانة عرضى . ولو شرحت أحوالى لطال الشرح .

وهأنا قد ترى ما آلت حالى إليه ، وأنا أجمعه لك فى كلمة واحدة هى قوله تعالى : ﴿ وَأَتَقُوا اللَّهَ وَيُعَلِّمُوا اللَّهَ ﴾ ( البقرة : ٢٨٢ ) .

\* \* \*

(١) قال سبطه أبو المظفر ( ٨ / ٤٨٢ — مرآة الزمان ) : « سمعت جدى يقول : بأصبعى هاتين كتبت ألفى مجلدة ، وتاب على يدي مائة ألف ، وأسلم على يدي عشرون ألفا . وسقطت كلمة عشرون من مطبوعة المرأة واستدركها محقق سير اعلام النبلاء ( ٢١ / ٣٧٠ ) ، وقال فى المنتظم ( ١٠ / ٢٣٧ ) : « وَعَظَّتْ بِالْحَلْبَةِ فى رمضان فَنَقَطَتْ شعورُ مائة وعشرين نفساً » . وقال فى صيد الخاطر ( ٤١ ) : « إنه لا يخلو لى مجلس من خلق لا يحصون ، يكون ويندمون على ذنوبهم ، ويقوم فى الغالب جماعة يتوبون ويقطعون شعور الصبا ، وربما اتفق خمسون ومائة ... ولقد تاب عندى فى بعض الأيام أكثر من مائة وعمومهم صبيان قد نشئوا على اللعب والانهماك فى المعاصى » وكما يقول الحافظ ابن رجب فى ذيل طبقات الحنابلة ( ٣ / ٤١٠ ) « وحاصل الأمر أن مجالسه الوعظية لم يكن لها نظير ، ولم يسمع بمثلا ، وكانت عظيمة النفع يتذكر بها الغافلون ، ويتعلم منها الجاهلون ، ويتوب فيها المذنبون ، ويسلم فيها المشركون ... » ا . هـ

## فصل حِفْظُ الْأَوْقَاتِ وَاعْتِنَاءُ اللَّحَظَاتِ

فانتبه يا بني : لِتَنْفِيسِكَ ، واندم على ما مَضَى من تفريطك .. واجتهد في لحاق الكاملين مادام في الوقت سَعَةٌ . واستقِ غُصَّتَكَ ، مادامت فيه رُطُوبَةٌ واذكر ساعتك التي ضاعت فكفى بها عظة ، ذَهَبَتْ لَذَّةُ الْكَسْلِ فيها وفاتت مراتب الفضائل .

وقد كان السلف الصالح رحمهم الله يحبون جمع كل فضيلة ويكون على فوات واحدة منها .

قال إبراهيمُ بنُ أدهم<sup>(١)</sup> رحمه الله : دَخَلْنَا عَلَى عَابِدِ مَرِيضٍ ، وَهُوَ

---

(١) هو الإمام القدوة العارف سيد الزهاد ، أبو إسحاق المجلي ، الخراساني البلخي ، نزيل الشام ولد في حدود ١٠٠ هـ وتوفي سنة ٦٦٢ هـ قال أبو نعيم : سمعتُ سُفْيَانَ يَقُولُ : « كَانَ إِبْرَاهِيمُ بْنُ أَدَهْمٍ يُشَبِّهُهُ إِبْرَاهِيمُ الْخَلِيلُ وَلَوْ كَانَ الصَّحَابَةَ ، لَكَانَ رَجُلًا فَاضِلًا » .

ترجمته في : حلية الأولياء ( ٧ / ٣٦٧ ) حتى ( ٨ / ٥٨ ) وطبقات الأولياء ( ٥ / ١٥ ) وسير أعلام النبلاء ( ٧ / ٣٨٧ ) والكامل لابن الأثير ( ٦ / ٥٦ ) =

يَنْظُرُ إِلَى رِجْلَيْهِ وَيَبْكِي ، فَقُلْنَا : مَا لَكَ تَبْكِي ؟ فَقَالَ : مَا اغْبَرَّتْنَا فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ .

وَبَكَى آخَرَ ، فَقَالُوا : مَا يَبْكِيكَ ؟ فَقَالَ : عَلَى يَوْمٍ مَضَى مَا صُمَّمْتُهُ وَعَلَى لَيْلَةٍ ذَهَبَتْ مَا قُمَّمْتَهَا .

واعلم يا بني: أن الأيام تُبْسَطُ ساعات ، والساعات تُبْسَطُ أنفاساً ، وكل نفس خزانة ، فاحذر أن يذهب نفسٌ بغير شيء، فترى في القيامة خزانة فارغة فتندم .

وقد قال رجل لعامر بن عبد قيس<sup>(١)</sup> : « قِفْ أَكَلْمَكَ ، فَقَالَ : أَمْسِكِ الشَّمْسَ » .

= البداية والنهاية ( ١٠ / ١٣٥ - ١٤٥ ) وشذرات الذهب ( ١ / ٢٥٥ - ٢٥٦ ) .

(١) هو الإمام أبو عبد الله ويقال : أبو عمرو التميمي العنبري ، عامر بن عبد قيس البصري وصفه الحافظ الذهبي بالقدوة الولي الزاهد وهو من الزهاد الثمانية من التابعين الذين انتهى الزهد إليهم رآه كعب الأحبار فقال : « هذا راهبٌ هذه الأمة » قال قتادة : « لما احتضر عامر بكى ، فقيل : ما يبكيك ؟ قال : ما أبكى جَزَعاً من الموت ، ولا حرصاً على الدنيا ، ولكن أبكى على ظمأ الهواجر وقيام الليل » وقيل : توفي في زمن معاوية ، راجع ترجمته : في طبقات ابن سعد ( ٧ / ١٠٣ ) والزهد لأحمد ( ٢١٨ ) والحلية ( ٢ / ٨٧ ) وسير أعلام النبلاء ( ٤ / ١٥ ) وزهد الثمانية من التابعين لمعلمة بن مرثد ص ( ٣٧ : ٤٠ ) .

وقعد قوم عند معروف رحمه الله<sup>(١)</sup> فقال : « أَمَا تُرِيدُونَ أَنْ تَقْمُوا ، فَإِنَّ مَلَكَ الشَّمْسِ يَجْرُهَا لَا يَفْتُرُ » . وفى الحديث : « مَنْ قَالَ سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ الْعَظِيمِ وَيَحْمَدِهِ ، غُرِسَتْ لَهُ بِهَا نَخْلَةٌ فِي الْجَنَّةِ »<sup>(٢)</sup> فانظر إلى مضيع الساعات كم يفوته من النخيل ؟ ! .

(١) معروف الكرخي أبو محفوظ البغدادي « علم الزهاد ، بركة العصر » هكذا وصفه الحافظ الذهبي وقد جمع الحافظ ابن الجوزي مناقبه فى كتاب وهو مطبوع توفى رحمه الله سنة ٢٠٠ هـ . ووصفه الإمام أحمد بأنه مستجاب الدعوة قال عبد الله بن أحمد بن حنبل : « قلت لأبى ، هل كان مع معروف شىء من العلم ؟ فقال : يا بُنى ، كان معه رأس العلم ، خشية الله » .

راجع ترجمته فى : طبقات الأولياء ( ٢٨٠ ، ٢٨٥ ) وطبقات الصوفية ( ٨٣ - ٩٠ ) وطبقات الحنابلة ( ١ / ٣٨١ ، ٣٨٩ ) وصفة الصفة ( ٢ / ٧٩ - ٨٣ ) والحلية ( ٨ / ٣٦٠ ، ٣٦٨ ) وسير اعلام النبلاء ( ٠ / ٣٣٩ - ٣٤٥ ) .

(٢) حَدِيثٌ صَحِيحٌ : أخرجه ابن أبى شيبة فى المصنف ( ١٠ / ٢٩٠ ) والترمذى ( ٣٤٦ ) والنسائى فى عمل اليوم والليلة ( ٨٢٧ ) وابن حبان ( ٢٣٣٥ - موارد ) والحاكم فى المستدرک ( ١ / ٥٠١ ، ٥٠٢ ) وأبو يعلى ( ٢٢٣٣ ) من حديث جابر رضى الله عنه .

وقال الترمذى : « حديث حسن صحيح غريب » وصححه الحاكم على شرط مسلم ووافقه الذهبي وهو كما قال . وللحديث شواهد من حديث عبد الله بن عمرو ومعاذ بن سهل ذكرها الألبانى فى الصحيحة ( ٦٤ ) .

○ وقد كان السلف يفتنمون اللُّحظَات ، فكان كهمس<sup>(١)</sup> رحمه الله  
يُخْتَمُ الْقُرْآنَ كُلُّ يَوْمٍ وَكَيْلَةَ ثَلَاثَ مَرَاتٍ .

(١) كَهْمَسُ بن الحسن التميمي ، الحنفي البصري ، العابد أبو الحسن من كبار  
الثقات وكان من العباد الصالحين توفي سنة ١٤٩ هـ . ومما جاء في كثرة عبادته  
أنه كان يصلي في اليوم واللييلة ألف ركعة فإذا ملَّ ، قال : « قومي يا مأوى كُلِّ  
سوء ، فو الله ما رضيتك لله ساعة » راجع ترجمته في : تذكرة الحفاظ ( ١ /  
١٧٤ ) وسير أعلام النبلاء ( ٦ / ٣١٦ ) وخلاصة تهذيب الكمال ( ٣٢٢ )  
وتهذيب التهذيب ( ٥٤٠٨ ) وشذرات الذهب ( ١ / ٢٢٥ ) .

فائدة : صحَّ عن النبي ﷺ : أنه نهى أن يقرأ القرآن في أقل من ثلاث كما  
في حديث عبد الله بن عمرو وفيه فقال رسول الله ﷺ : « اقرأ القرآن في كل  
شهر » فقال : إني أطيق أكثر من ذلك ، فما زال حتى قال : « في ثلاث » رواه  
البخاري ( ١٩٧٨ ) وأيضاً قال لعبد الله بن عمرو : « اقرأه في سبع ولا ترد على  
ذلك » رواه البخاري ( ٥٠٥٤ ) ومسلم ( ١١٥٩ ) ( ١٨٤ ) .

وأما ما جاء عن كثير من سلف هذه الأمة الكرام من قراءتهم للقرآن في أقل  
من ثلاث فلا نملك إلا أن نقول كما قال الحافظ الناقد الجليل الذهبي رحمه الله  
ورضى عنه عندما أورد في السير في ترجمة وكيع بن الجراح الإمام المشهور ( ٩ /  
١٤٣ ) قول يحيى بن أكثم : « صحبت وكيعاً في الحضر والسفر وكان يصوم  
الدهر ويختم القرآن كل ليلة » قلت ( القائل الحافظ الذهبي ) : « هذه عبادة  
يخضع لها ، ولكنهما من مثل إمام من الأئمة الأثرية مفضولة ، فقد صحَّ نهيه عليه  
السلام عن صوم الدهر وصح أنه نهى أن يقرأ القرآن في أقل من ثلاث ، والدين  
يسر ، ومتابعة السنة أولى ، فرضى الله عن وكيع ، وأين مثل وكيع ؟ » ا . هـ  
قلت : رحم الله الحافظ الذهبي فقد كان ناقداً بارعاً يستحق أن يطلق عليه « إمام =

وكان أربعون رجلاً من السلف يصلون الصبح بوضوء العشاء<sup>(١)</sup> .

وكانت رابعة العدوية<sup>(٢)</sup> تُحِبُّ اللَّيْلَ كُلَّهُ ، فَإِذَا طَلَعَ الْفَجْرُ هَجَعَتْ هَجْعَةً خَفِيفَةً ثُمَّ قَامَتْ فِرْعَةَ وَقَالَتْ لِنَفْسِهَا : « النَّوْمُ فِي الْقَبْرِ طَوِيلٌ » .

\* \* \*

= الثَّاقِدِينَ الْمُتَّصِفِينَ « فَرَحَمَ اللَّهُ هَذَا الْإِمَامَ وَحَشَرْنَا وَإِيَّاهُ فِي زَمْرَةِ أَهْلِ الْحَدِيثِ فَيَعْلَمُ اللَّهُ أَنِّي أَحِبُّهُ فِي اللَّهِ كَثِيرًا .

(١) رَحِمَ اللَّهُ ابْنَ الْجَوْزِيِّ إِذْ يَقُولُ : « اللَّهُ دَرَّ أَقْرَامَ هَجَرُوا لِذِيذِ الْمَنَامِ وَتَنَصَلُوا لَمَّا نَصَبُوا لَهُ الْأَقْدَامَ ، وَانْتَصَبُوا لِلنُّصَبِ فِي الظَّلَامِ ، يَطْلُبُونَ نَصِيبًا مِنَ الْإِنْعَامِ ، إِذَا جَنَّ اللَّيْلُ سَهَرُوا وَإِذَا النَّهَارُ جَاءَ اعْتَبَرُوا ، وَإِذَا نَظَرُوا فِي عِيوبِهِمْ اسْتَغْفَرُوا ، وَإِذَا تَفَكَّرُوا فِي ذُنُوبِهِمْ بَكَوْا وَانكَسَرُوا .. يَا مَنَازِلَ الْأَحْبَابِ أَيْنَ سَاكِنُوكَ ؟ يَا بَقَاعَ الْإِحْلَاصِ أَيْنَ قَاطِنُوكَ ؟ يَا مَوَاطِنَ الْأَبْرَارِ أَيْنَ عَامِرُوكَ ؟ يَا مَوَاضِعَ التَّهَجُّدِ أَيْنَ زَائِرُوكَ ؟ .

خَلَّتْ وَاللَّهِ الدِّيَارُ ، وَبَادَ الْقَوْمَ ، وَارْتَحَلَ أَرْبَابَ السَّهْرِ وَبَقِيَ أَهْلُ النَّوْمِ . وَاسْتَبَدَلَ الزَّمَانَ أَكَلَ الشَّهْوَاتِ بِالصَّوْمِ » . « الْيَوَاقِيتِ الْجَوْزِيَّةِ ص ( ٢٨ ، ٢٩ ) » .  
 (٢) رَابِعَةُ الْعَدَوِيَّةُ أُمُّ الْخَيْرِ بِنْتُ إِسْمَاعِيلِ الْبَصْرِيَّةِ الصَّالِحَةِ الْمَسْتُورَةِ الرَّاهِدَةِ الْعَابِدَةِ ، الْخَاشِعَةُ قَبِيلَ عَاشَتْ ثَمَانِينَ سَنَةً تُوْفِيَتْ سَنَةَ ١٨٠ هـ وَالْأَثَرُ أَوْرَدَهُ الْحَافِظُ الذَّهَبِيُّ عَنْهَا مِنْ طَرِيقِ ابْنِ أَبِي الدُّنْيَا حَدَّثَنَا مُحَمَّدُ بْنُ الْحُسَيْنِ ، حَدَّثَنِي عَبِيسُ بْنُ مَيْمُونِ الْعَطَّارِ ، حَدَّثَنِي عُبَيْدَةُ بِنْتُ أَبِي شَوَالٍ وَكَانَتْ تَخْدُمُ رَابِعَةَ الْعَدَوِيَّةَ قَالَتْ : « كَانَتْ رَابِعَةُ تَصَلِّيُ اللَّيْلَ كُلَّهُ ، فَإِذَا طَلَعَ الْفَجْرُ ، هَجَعَتْ هَجْعَةً حَتَّى يَسْفِرَ الْفَجْرُ ، فَكُنْتُ أَسْمَعُهَا تَقُولُ : يَا نَفْسُ كَمْ تَنَامِينَ وَإِلَى كَمْ تَقُومِينَ ، يَوْشَكَ أَنْ تَنَامِيَ نَوْمَةً لَا تَقُومِينَ مِنْهَا إِلَّا لِيَوْمِ النَّشُورِ » أَوْرَدَ الْحَافِظُ ابْنَ الْجَوْزِيِّ فِي كِتَابِهِ ( الْمَدْهَشُ ص ٢١١ ) : أَنْ رَابِعَةَ الْعَابِدَةِ كَانَتْ تَقُومُ مِنْ أَوَّلِ اللَّيْلِ وَتَقُولُ :  
 قَامَ الْمُحِبُّ إِلَى الْمُؤْمَلِ قَوْمَةً كَادَ الْفُؤَادُ مِنَ السَّرُورِ يَطِيرُ =

== فإذا انقضى الليل صاحت واحرباه ، واسلباه .  
 ذهب الظلام بأنسه وبألفه ليت الظلام بأنسه يتجدد  
 تنبيه مهم :

رابعة العلوية تلك المرأة الصالحة العابدة الزاهدة التي ظلمها الناس فمنهم من نسبها إلى الحلول والعباد بالله ومنهم من نسبها إلى الإباحة ومنهم من أنكر وجودها بالكلية وكل هذا ظلم وإجحاف لها فقد حكى عنها الأئمة الكبار أمثال سفيان الثوري وشعبة ما يدل على بطلان ما قيل عنها قال الحافظ الذهبي في السير ( ٨ / ٢٤٢ ، ٢٤٣ ) : قال ابو سعيد بن الأعرابي : أما رابعة فقد حمل الناس عنها حكمة كثيرة ، وحكى عنها سفيان وشعبة وغيرهما مما يدل على بطلان ما قيل عنها وقد تمثلته بهذا :

وَلَقَدْ جَعَلْتِكِ فِي الْفَوَاقِدِ مَحَدَّثِي وَأَبْحَثْ جِسْمِي مِنْ أَرَادَ جُلُوسِي  
 فنسبها بعضهم إلى الحلول بنصف البيت ، وإلى الإباحة بتمامه . قلت ( القائل الحافظ الذهبي ) : فهذا غُلُوٌّ وجهل ، ولعل من نسبها إلى ذلك مُباحٍ حلولي ليحتج بها على كفره كاحتجاجهم بخير ( كنت سمعه الذي يسمع به ) . ا . هـ .  
 قلت : ومن مخازي بعض أهل عصرنا من الصوفية الحلوليين احتجاجهم ونشرهم لما يقال عنها من أشعار مكذوبة ومختلفة وحكايات باطلة ليحتجوا بها على ضلالهم المبين نعوذ بالله من الخذلان ! حتى إن بعضهم ألف كتاباً في ذلك وفي سيرتها أورد فيه من الضلال ما تقشع منه أبدان المسلم الموحد المتبع .  
 وأسخف من هؤلاء أولئك الذين صوروا حياتها في فيلم وأنها كانت راقصة في أول حياتها وغير ذلك من الحكايات الباطلة ليفتتوا الناس عن دينهم أضلهم الله وأخزاهم بفنئهم الممقوت الماجن المشوه للحقائق .  
 =

○ وأما من ينكر وجودها بالكلية فنقول له تأمل يا هذا وانتبه لهذه المصادر التي ترجمت لها وهي من أئمة أعلام في هذا الشأن أمثال الذهبي في سير أعلام النبلاء (٨ / ٢٤٢) والعبير (١ / ٢٧٨) وابن خلكان في وفيات الأعيان (٣ / ٢١٥) وابن العماد في شذرات الذهب (١ / ١٩٣) وابن كثير في البداية والنهاية (١٠ / ١٨٦) والخطيب البغدادي في تاريخ بغداد (٢ / ٤٠) وابن الجوزي في صفة الصفوة (٤ / ١٧ - ١٩) .

حتى أن الحافظ ابن الجوزي أفرد مناقبها في كتاب كما ذكر ذلك الذهبي في السير (٨ / ٢٤٢) ومن طريف ما جاء عن الحافظ ابن الجوزي أنه سمى ابنته الكبرى - وأم سبطه أبو المظفر صاحب مرآة الزمان - باسم رابعة وتراه في معظم كتبه الوعظية يورد أخبارها وأحوالها .



## فصل بِمَاذَا اشْتَرَى هَذِهِ الْحَيَاةُ الْإِبْدِيَّةَ

ومن تَفَكَّرَ في الدنيا قبل أن يوجد رَأَى مدة طويلة ، فإذا تَفَكَّرَ فيها بعد أن يخرج منها رَأَى مدة طويلة ، وَعَلِمَ أَنَّ اللَّبثَ في القبور طويل ، فإذا تَفَكَّرَ في يوم القيامة عَلِمَ أَنَّهُ خمسون ألف سنة ، فإذا تَفَكَّرَ في اللَّبثِ في الجنة أو النار علم أَنَّهُ لا نهاية له ، فإذا عاد إلى النَّظَرِ في مقدار بَقَائِهِ في الدنيا فرضنا ستين سنة مثلاً<sup>(١)</sup> فَإِنَّهُ يمضي منها ثلاثون سنة في

---

(١) فعن أبي هريرة رضي الله عنه قال : قال رسول الله ﷺ : « أَعْمَارُ أُمَّتِي مَا بَيْنَ السِّتِينَ إِلَى السَّبْعِينَ ، وَأَقْلَهُمْ مَنْ يَجُوزُ ذَلِكَ » رواه الترمذى ( ٣٥٥٠ ) وابن ماجه ( ٤٢٣٦ ) وابن حبان ( ٢٤٦٧ — موارد ) والحاكم في المستدرک ( ٤٢٧ / ٢ ) وقال الترمذى : « حسن غريب » وقال الحاكم : « صحيح على شرط مسلم » ، وأقره الذهبي . وقال الحافظ في الفتح ( ١١ / ٢٤٠ ) : « إسناده حسن » والحق أن الحديث حسن لذاته صحيح لغيره فإن له طريقاً آخر بإسناد حسن أيضاً عند الترمذى ( ٢٣٣١ ) وقال : « حسن غريب » .

• وقال ابن الجوزى عن هذا الحديث : « إنما طالت أعمار الأوائل لطول البادية ، فلما شارف الركب بلد الإقامة . قيل : حُتُوا المطى » راجع ذيل طبقات الحنابلة ( ١ / ٤٢١ ) .

النوم ، ونحو من خمس عشرة فى الصبى ، فإذا حسب الباقي كان أكثره الشهوات والمطاعم والمكاسب ، فإذا خَلَصَ ما للآخرة وجد فيه من الرِّياء والغفلة كثيراً ، فِيمَاذَا تُشْتَرَى الحياة الأبدية وإنما الثمن هذه الساعات ؟ .

\* \* \*

---

== قال بعض الحكماء : « الأسنان أربعة من الطفولية ، ثم الشباب ، ثم الكهولة ، ثم الشيخوخة وهى آخر الأسنان ، وغالب ما يكون ما بين الستين والسبعين فحينئذ يظهر ضعف القوة بالنقص والانحطاط ، فينبغى له الإقبال على الآخرة بالكلية لاستحالة أن يرجع إلى الحالة الأولى من النشاط والقوة » ١ . هـ وذكره الحافظ فى الفتح ( ١١ / ٢٤٠ ) .

قلت : وتأمل قول النبي ﷺ : « أَعْدَرَ اللهُ إِلَى امرئٍ أُخْرَجَ أَجَلُهُ حَتَّى بَلَغَهُ ستين سنة » رواه البخارى ( ٦٤١٩ ) من حديث أبى هريرة رضى الله عنه مرفوعاً .

## فصل الإنباءُ بعد الغفلةِ

ولا يؤيسك يا بني من الخير ما مضى من التفريط ، فإنه قد انتبه خلق  
كثير بعد الرقاد الطويل .

فقد حدثني الشيخ أبو حكيم<sup>(١)</sup> رحمه الله ، قال : « كُنْتُ فِي  
صَبَوْتِي مُتَشَاعِلًا بِالْبَطَالَةِ غَيْرِ مُلْتَمِعٍ إِلَى الْعِلْمِ ، فَأَحْضَرَنِي أَبِي أَبُو عَبْدِ  
اللَّهِ رَحِمَهُ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى . وَقَالَ لِي : يَا بَنِي ، لَسْتُ أَبْقَى لَكَ أَبَدًا ، فَخُذْ  
عِشْرِينَ دِينَارًا وَافْتَحْ لَكَ دَكَانَ خَبَازٍ وَتَكْسَبْ ، فَقُلْتُ لَهُ : مَا هَذَا

---

(١) هو العلامة القدوة أبو حكيم ، إبراهيم بن دينار التُّهْرَوَانِيُّ الحَنْبَلِيُّ أَحَدُ أئِمَّةِ  
بَغْدَادِ إِمَامِ زَاهِدٍ وَرِعٍ خَيْرِ حَلِيمٍ ، إِلَيْهِ الْمُنْتَهَى فِي عِلْمِ الْفَرَائِضِ أَنْشَأَ بِنَابَ الْأَرْجِ  
مَدْرَسَةً ، وَانْقَطَعَ بِهَا يَتَعَبَدُ وَكَانَ يُؤَثِّرُ الْخُمُولَ وَالْقَنُوعَ وَيَقْتَاتُ مِنَ الْخِيَاطَةِ ،  
فِيأَخِذُ عَلَى الْقَمِيصِ حَبْتَيْنِ فَقَطْ ، وَلَقَدْ جَاهَدَ جَمَاعَةً فِي إِغْضَابِهِ ، فَعَجَزُوا ، وَكَانَ  
يَخْدُمُ الزُّمْنَى وَالْعَجَائِزَ بِوَجْهِ طَلْقٍ ، وَسَمَاعِهِ صَحِيحٌ تُوُفِيَ سَنَةَ ٥٥٦ هـ قَالَ الْحَافِظُ  
الذَّهَبِيُّ فِي سِيرِ أَعْلَامِ النِّبَلَاءِ ( ٢٠ / ٣٩٦ ) وَرَاجِعُ تَرْجُمَتِهِ فِي : الْمُنْتَظَمِ ( ١٠ /  
٢٠١ ، ٢٠٢ ) لِابْنِ الْجَوْزِيِّ وَذَيْلِ طَبَقَاتِ الْحَنْبَلَةِ ( ١ / ٢٣١ - ٢٤١ )  
وَشَذَرَاتِ الذَّهَبِ ( ٤ / ١٧٦ ) وَالْبَدَايَةِ وَالنِّهَايَةِ ( ١٢ / ٢٤٥ ) .

الكلام ؟ قال : فافتح دكان بزازٍ فقلت : كيف تقول لي هذا وأنا ابن قاضي القضاء عبدالله الدامغاني<sup>(١)</sup> قال : فما أراك تطلبُ العلم ، فقلت : أذكرُ لي الدرس الساعة ، فذكر لي ، فأقبلت على التَّشَاغُلِ بالعلم . فعند ذلك أَقْبَلْتُ على الاشتغال بالعلم ، واجتهدت ففتح الله تعالى .

وحكى لي بعض أصحاب أبي محمد الحلواني<sup>(٢)</sup> رحمه الله قال : « مات أبي وأنا ابنُ إِخْدَى وَعِشْرِينَ سنة ، وكنت مَوْصُوفاً بِالْبَطَالَةِ ، فَأْتَيْت أَتْقَاضِي بعض سكان دار قد وَرَثْتُهَا فسمعتهم يقولون : جَاءَ

(١) هو العلامة البارع ، مفتى العراق ، قاضي القضاة ، أبو عبدالله ، محمد بن علي بن محمد بن حسن بن عبد الوهاب بن حسويه الدامغاني الحنفي « نسبة إلى دامغان وهي بلدة كبيرة بين الري ونيسابور قال الذهبي : كان ذا جلاله وحشمية وافرته إلى الغاية ، يُنظَرُ بالقاضي أبي يوسف في زمانه . وفي أولاده أئمة وقضاة » ١ . هـ .

توفي سنة ٤٧٨ هـ وصلى عليه ولده قاضي القضاة أبو الحسن . تراجع ترجمته في : تاريخ بغداد ( ٣ / ١٠٩ ) والبداية والنهاية ( ١٢ / ١٢٩ ) وشذرات الذهب ( ٣ / ٣٦٢ ) والفوائد البهية ( ١٨٢ - ١٨٣ ) والكامل ( ١٠ / ١٤٦ ) وسير أعلام النبلاء ( ١٨ / ٤٨٥ ) والعيبر ( ٣ / ٢٩٢ ) .

(٢) الفقيه عبد الرحمن بن محمد بن علي بن محمد الحلواني الفقيه الإمام أبو محمد بن أبي الفتح قال المنذري : كان من شيوخ الحنابلة وله معرفة بالفقه والتفسير والحديث وقال ابن رجب : رأيت بخطه ما يقتضى : أن له تعليقة في مسائل الخلاف كبيرة وله تفسير القرآن في واحد وأربعين جزءاً حَدَّثَ به . راجع ترجمته في ذيل طبقات الحنابلة لابن رجب ( ١ / ٢٢١ ) .

المُذَبِّرُ ، أَى الرِّبِيط . فقلت لنفسي يقال عنى هذا ؟ فَجِئْتُ إِلَى والدتى  
فقلت : إِذَا أُرِدْتُ طَلَبِي فَاطْلُبِينِي مِنْ مَسْجِدِ الشَّيْخِ أَبِي الْخَطَّابِ (١) .  
ولازمته فما خرجت إِلا إِلَى القضاة ، فَصِرْتُ قاضياً مدة . ( قلت ) :  
« وَرَأَيْتُهُ أَنَا وَهُوَ يُفْتِي وَيُنَظَرُ » .

\* \* \*

(١) هو الشيخ الإمام العلامة الورع شيخ الحنابلة أبو الخطاب محفوظ بن  
أحمد بن حسن بن حسن العراقي ، الكَلْبُذَانِي ثم البغدادى توفى سنة ٥١٠ هـ قال  
الحافظ الذهبي : « كان أبو الخطاب من محاسن العلماء ، خيراً صادقاً ، حسن  
الخُلُق ، حُلُو النَّادِرَةِ ، من أذكىاء الرُّجال ، روى الكثير ، وطلب الحديث وكتبه »  
١ . هـ وقال ابن رجب فى الذيل ( ١ / ١٢٠ ) : « كان أبو الخطاب فقيهاً  
عظيماً ، كثير التحقق وله من التحقيق والتدقيق الحسن فى مسائل الفقه وأصوله  
شئ كثير جداً وله مسائل ينفرد بها عن الأصحاب .. » ثم ذكر منها أشياء  
كثيرة ...

وراجع ترجمته فى : سير أعلام النبلاء ( ٣٤٨ / ١٩ ) والمتنظم لابن الجوزى  
( ٩ / ١٩٠ - ١٩٣ ) والكامل ( ١٠ / ٥٢٤ ) العبر ( ٤ / ٢١ ) ومرآة الزمان  
( ٨ / ٤١ - ٤٢ ) والبداية والنهاية ( ١٢ / ١٨٠ ) وذيل طبقات الحنابلة ( ١ /  
١١٦ - ١٢٧ ) وشذرات الذهب ( ٤ / ٢٧ - ٢٨ ) .

## فصل مَنْعُ تَرْبَوِيٍّ فِي الْيَوْمِ وَاللَّيْلَةِ

○ فالزم نفسك يا بني الانتباه عند طلوع الفجر ولا تتحدث بِحَدِيثِ الدُّنْيَا ، فقد كان السلف الصالح رحمهم الله لا يتكلمون في ذلك الوقت بشيء من أمور الدنيا (١) .

(١) وقد كان هذا دأبهم وهذه هي مسيرتهم في ذلك الوقت . فهذا حسان بن عطية أحد ثقات التابعين : « كان إذا صلى العصر يجلس في المسجد يذكر الله تعالى حتى تغيب الشمس » السير ( ٤٦٧ / ٥ ) .

وهذا شيخ الإسلام ابن تيمية كما يذكر عنه تلميذه البار الحافظ ابن القيم في الوابل الصيب ( ٣٩ ، ٤٠ ) « أنه حضره مرةً صلى الفجر ثم جلس يذكر الله تعالى إلى قريب من انتصاف النهار ثم التفت إلى وقال : « هذه غدوتي ولو لم أتغد الغداء سقطت قوتي » .

قلت : ومن أهم ما يفعله المسلم بعد صلاة الفجر هو التوجه إلى الله بكلية بذكره والتوجه إليه بالأذكار التي شرعت أول النهار فيجعلها ورداً له لا يخل بها أبداً ثم يزيد عليها ما شاء الله من الأذكار الفاضلة أو قراءة القرآن حتى تطلع الشمس . راجع : طريق الهجرتين لابن القيم ص ( ٢٧١ ، ٢٧٢ ) وكتابنا الصغير « أذكار الصباح والمساء » .

○ **وَقُلْ عِنْدَ انْتِبَاهِكَ مِنَ النَّوْمِ : « الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي أَحْيَانِي بَعْدَ مَا أَمَاتَنِي وَإِلَيْهِ النُّشُورُ » (١) ، « الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي يُمَسِّكُ السَّمَاءَ أَنْ تَقَعَ عَلَى الْأَرْضِ إِلَّا بِإِذْنِهِ ، إِنَّ اللَّهَ بِالنَّاسِ لَكَرُوفٌ رَحِيمٌ » (٢) .**

○ **ثم قم إلى الطهارة واركع سنة الفجر (٣) ، واخرج إلى المسجد**

(١) رواه البخارى : كتاب الدعوات باب ما يقول إذا نام ( ٦٣١٢ ) فى حديث حذيفة رضى الله عنه . ورواه البخارى : كتاب الدعوات : باب ما يقول إذا أصبح ( ٦٣٢٥ ) من حديث أبى ذر رضى الله عنه ورواه مسلم : كتاب الذكر والدعاء .. باب ما يقول عند النوم وأخذ المضجع ( ٢٧١٣ ) ( ٥٩ ) من حديث البراء بن عازب رضى الله عنه . قال الحافظ فى الفتح ( ١١ / ١١٤ ) : وإليه النشور : « أى البعث يوم القيامة والإحياء بعد الإمامة ، يقال نشر الله الموتى أى أحياهم فحيوا » ا . هـ .

(٢) رواه أبو يعلى فى مسنده ( ١٧٩١ ) والنسائى فى عمل اليوم والليلة ( ٨٥٣ ، ٨٥٤ ) وابن السنى ( ١٢ ) وابن حبان فى صحيحه ( ٢٣٦٢ ) — موارد . والحاكم ( ١ / ٥٤٨ ) كلهم من طريق أبى الزبير عن جابر مطولاً ومرفوعاً .. وقال الهيثمى فى المجمع بعد أن عزاه لأبى يعلى ( ١٠ / ١٢٠ ) : ورجاله رجال الصحيح غير ابراهيم بن الحجاج الشامى وهو ثقة .

وقال المنذرى فى الترغيب ( ١ / ٤١٦ ) : « أخرجه أبو يعلى بإسناد صحيح » والحديث صححه الحاكم على شرط مسلم ووافقه الذهبى . وقال الحافظ فى نتائج الأفكار ص ( ١٩٨ ) : « حديث حسن غريب » .

(٣) فعن عائشة رضى الله عنها قالت : « لم يكن النبى ﷺ على شىء من النوافل أشدَّ تعاهداً منه على ركعتى الفجر » رواه البخارى ( ١١٦٩ ) ومسلم =

خاشعاً وقل في طريقك : « اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَسْأَلُكَ بِحَقِّ السَّائِلِينَ عَلَيْكَ وَبِحَقِّ مَمْشَايَ هَذَا ، أَنِّي لَمْ أُخْرِجْ أَشْرًا وَلَا بَطْرًا وَلَا رِيَاءً وَلَا سَمْعَةً ، خَرَجْتُ اتِّقَاءَ سَخَطِكَ ، وَابْتِغَاءَ مَرْضَاتِكَ ، أَسْأَلُكَ أَنْ تَجِيرَنِي مِنَ النَّارِ ، وَأَنْ تَغْفِرَ لِي ذُنُوبِي ، إِنَّهُ لَا يَغْفِرُ الذُّنُوبَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ » (١) .

○ واقصد الصلاة إلى يمين الإمام (٢) ، فإذا فرغت من الصلاة فقل : « لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ ، لَهُ الْمُلْكُ وَلَهُ الْحَمْدُ ، يُحْيِي

== (٧٢٤) (٩٤) مكرر وعنها قالت أن النبي ﷺ قال : « ركعتا الفجر خير من الدنيا وما فيها » رواه مسلم (٧٢٥) (٩٦) وفي رواية له (٧٢٥) (٩٧) : « لهما أحب إلي من الدنيا جميعا » .  
(١) حديث ضعيف :

أخرجه أحمد (٣ / ٢١) وابن ماجه (٧٧٨) وابن السني (٨٣) . وقال البوصيري في الزوائد : « إسناده مسلسل بالضعفاء » والحديث ضعفه أيضاً المنذرى في الترغيب وشيخ الإسلام في التوسل والوسيلة وراجع أيضاً التوسل للألباني ص (٩٣ : ٩٩) والسلسلة الضعيفة (٢٤) فإنه أجاد فيها في بيان علل الحديث ويعنى عن هذا الحديث ما رواه مسلم (٧٦٣) (١٩١) من حديث ابن عباس رضي الله عنهما في ميته في بيت خالته ميمونة رضي الله عنها ، ذكر الحديث في تهجد النبي ﷺ قال : فأذن المؤذن ، يعنى الصبح ، فخرج إلى الصلاة وهو يقول : « اللَّهُمَّ اجعل في قلبي نوراً ، وفي لساني نوراً ، واجعل في سمعي نوراً واجعل في بصري نوراً ، واجعل من خلفي نوراً ومن أمامي نوراً واجعل من فوقي نوراً ومن تحتي نوراً ، اللهم أعطني نوراً » .

(٢) بوب الإمام البخارى في صحيحه كتاب الأذان — ٧٩ — باب ميمنة المسجد والإمام قال المحافظ في الفتح (٢ / ٢١٣) : « وكأنه أشار إلى ما أخرجه =



ويميت ، بيده الخير وهو على كل شيء قدير ، عشر مرات <sup>(١)</sup> . ثم  
سَبَّحَ عَشْرًا ، وَاخْمَدَ عَشْرًا ، وَكَبَّرَ عَشْرًا <sup>(٢)</sup> ، وَاقْرَأَ آيَةَ الْكُرْسِيِّ <sup>(٣)</sup> ،

=النسائي بإسناد صحيح عن البراء قال : كنا إذا صلينا خلف النبي ﷺ أحببنا أن  
نكون عن يمينه ، ولأبي داود بإسناد حسن عن عائشة مرفوعاً : « إن الله وملائكته  
يصلون على ميمنك الصفوف » . ا . ه .

قلت : لقد زهد كثير من الناس في هذه السنن والفضائل حتى رأيت بعيني  
كثيراً من إخواننا يفضلون اليسار على اليمين لوجود المراوح الكهربائية ويتركون  
الصف اليمين فسبحان الله ! على من يضيع على نفسه خيراً كثيراً من ثناء الله  
عليه في الملأ الأعلى واستغفار الملائكة له .

(١) حديث صحيح : رواه أحمد ( ٤١٥ / ٥ ) من حديث أبي أيوب الأنصاري  
رضي الله عنه وصححه الألباني لطرقه وشواهد وراجع المصادر التالية : صحيح  
الترغيب ( ٦٥٦ ) والسلسلة الصحيحة ( ١١٣ ، ١١٤ ) .

(٢) حديث صحيح : أخرجه أبو داود ( ٥٠٦٥ ) والترمذي ( ٣٤٠٧ )  
والنسائي ( ٧٤ / ٣ ) من حديث عبد الله بن عمرو رضي الله عنهما وصححه إسناده  
النووي في الأذكار ص ( ١٤٢ ) والحافظ كما في الفتوحات الربانية ( ٥١ / ١ )  
(٣) حديث صحيح : رواه ابن السنن ( ١٢ ) من حديث محمد بن حمير

عن محمد بن زياد الألهاني عن أبي أمامة ، مرفوعاً بلفظ : « من قرأ آية الكرسي  
في دبر كل صلاة لم يحل بينه وبين دخول الجنة إلا الموت » وقال المنذري في  
الترغيب ( ٢ / ٢٦١ ) : « رواه النسائي والطبراني بأسانيد أحدها صحيح ، وقال  
شيخنا أبو الحسن : هو على شرط البخاري وابن حبان في كتاب الصلاة  
وصححه ، وزاد الطبراني في بعض طرقه : و ﴿ قل هو الله أحد ﴾ وإسناده بهذه  
الزيادة جيد أيضاً » وقال الهيثمي في المجمع ( ١٠ / ١٠٢ ) : « رواه الطبراني  
في الكبير والأوسط بأسانيد أحدها جيد » . ا . ه . =

وَسَأَلَ اللهُ سُبْحَانَهُ قَبُولَ الصَّلَاةِ ، فَإِنْ صَحَّ فَاجْلِسْ ذَاكِرًا اللهُ تَعَالَى إِلَى أَنْ تَطْلُعَ الشَّمْسُ وَتَرْتَفِعَ ، ثُمَّ صَلِّ وَتَرَكِعْ مَا كُتِبَ لَكَ ، وَإِنْ كَانَ ثَمَانِ رَكَعَاتٍ فَهُوَ حَسَنٌ (١) .

=والحديث عند النسائي في عمل اليوم والليلة ( ١٠٠ ) وللحديث شاهد من حديث المغيرة بن شعبة أخرجه أبو نعيم في الحلية ( ٣ / ١٢١ ) وإسناده حسن . وقد أدخل هذا الحديث الحافظ ابن الجوزي في الموضوعات فأخطأً وراجع في الكلام على الحديث : زاد المعاد ( ١ / ٣٠٣ ، ٣٠٤ ) وتحفة الذاكرين للشوكاني ص ( ١١٧ ) والسلسلة الصحيحة للألباني ( ٩٧٢ ) .

فائدة : قال شيخ الإسلام ابن القيم في زاد المعاد ( ١ / ٣٠٤ ) : « بلغني عن شيخنا أبي العباس ابن تيمية قدس الله روحه أنه قال : « ما تركتها عقيب كل صلاة » .

(١) لحديث أم هانئ فاختة بنت أبي طالب رضي الله عنها قالت : ذهبت إلى رسول الله ﷺ عام الفتح فوجدته يغتسل ، فلما فرغ من غسله ، صلى ثمان ركعات وذلك ضحى ، رواه البخارى ( ١١٧٦ ) ومسلم ( ٣٣٦ ) ( ٨٢ ) وفي رواية لمسلم ( ٣٣٦ ) ( ٧١ ) « ثم صلى ثمان ركعات سبحة الضحى » قال النووي في شرح مسلم ( ٤ / ٢٩ ) هذا اللفظ فيه فائدة لطيفة وهي أن صلاة الضحى ثمان ركعات وموضوع الدلالة كونها قالت سبحة الضحى وهذا تصريح بأن هذا سنة مقررة معروفة بخلاف الرواية الأخرى « صلى ثمان ركعات وذلك ضحى » ١ . هـ .

فائدة : اعلم أن صلاة الضحى هي صلاة الأوابين أى الرجاعين من الغفلة إلى الحضور ومن الذنب إلى التوبة وأن أقلها ركعتان وأكملها ثمان ركعات وأوسطها أربع ركعات أو ست . والأفضل أن تصلى عند اشتداد الحر وارتفاع الضحى ويجوز أن تصلى من ارتفاع الشمس إلى زوالها . راجع زاد المعاد لابن القيم ( ١ / ٣٤١ : ٣٦٠ ) .

## فصل العلم أفضل من كل نافلة

○ فإذا أعدت درسك إلى وقت الضحى الأعلى فصل الضحى ثمانى ركعات ، ثم تشاغل بمطالعة أو نسخ إلى وقت العصر ، ثم عد إلى درسك من بعد العصر إلى وقت المغرب <sup>(١)</sup> ، وصل بعد المغرب ركعتين بجزأين ، فإذا صليت العشاء فعد على دروسك <sup>(٢)</sup> ثم اضطجع على

(١) اعلم رحمنى الله وإياك أن اختلاف الأوراد سواء كانت دعاء أو ذكراً أو قراءة للقرآن أو علماً نافعاً أو استغفاراً فى الليل أو النهار تختلف باختلاف الأحوال قال فى مختصر منهاج القاصدين ص ( ٨٢ ) : « اعلم أن السالك لطريق الآخرة لا يخلو من ستة أحوال : إما أن يكون عابداً ، أو عالماً أو متعلماً ، أو والياً ، أو محترفاً أو مستغرقاً بمحبة الله عز وجل مشغولاً به عن غيره » . ١ . هـ ثم أخذ يوضح وينظم لكل واحد حسب حاله .. فراجعه فإنه مهم جداً وليعلم أن الحال هنا فى نصيحة ابن الجوزى لابنه ينطبق على طالب العلم الذى تفرغ له وهيت له السبل والله أعلم .

(٢) قال الحافظ ابن الجوزى فى كتابه « الحث على حفظ العلم وذكر كبار الحفاظ » : ص ( ٣٥ ) « فى بيان طريق أحكام المحفوظ : الطريق فى أحكامه كثرة الإعادة والناس يتفاوتون فى ذلك فمنهم من يثبت معه المحفوظ مع قلة التكرار ومنهم من لا يحفظ إلا بعد التكرار الكثير . فينبغى للإنسان أن يعيد بعد الحفظ ، =

شك الأيمن<sup>(١)</sup> ، فسبح ثلاثاً وثلاثين ، واحمد ثلاثاً وثلاثين وكبر أربعاً وثلاثين<sup>(٢)</sup> ، وقل : اللهم قنى عذابك يوم تجمع عبادك ،<sup>(٣)</sup> .

=ليبيت معه المحفوظ . وقد قال النبي ﷺ : « تعاهدوا القرآن فإنه أشد تفصيلاً من صدور الرجال من النعم فى عقلها » ا . هـ .

قلت الحديث : متفق عليه أخرجه البخارى ( ٥٠٣٣ ) ومسلم ( ٧٩١ ) ( ٢٣١ ) من حديث أبى هريرة .

النعم : نفائس الإبل . تفصيلاً : أى تفلتاً وتخلصاً .

(١) راجع زاد المعاد ( ٤ / ٢٣٩ ) : « فصل فى تدييره ﷺ لأمر النوم

واليقظة » وفى صحيح البخارى ( ٦٣١٥ ) ومسلم ( ٢٧١٠ ) ( ٥٦ ) .

من حديث البراء بن عازب أن رسول الله ﷺ قال : « إذا أتيت مضجعك فتوضأ وضوءك للصلاة ثم اضطجع على شقك الأيمن ثم قل : اللهم إني أسلمت نفسى إليك ، ووجهت وجهى إليك ، وفوضت أمرى إليك ، وألجأت ظهرى إليك ، ورغبةً ورهبةً إليك ، لا ملجأً ولا منجأً منك إلا إليك ، آمنت بكتابك الذى أنزلت ، ونبيك الذى أرسلت . واجعلهن آخر كلامك ، فإن مت من ليلتك ، مت على الفطرة » .

(٢) لما رواه البخارى ( ٦٣١٨ ) ومسلم ( ٢٧٢٧ ) عن على رضى الله عنه

أن رسول الله ﷺ قال له ولفاطمة رضى الله عنهما : « إذا أويما إلى فراشكما أو أخذتما مضجعكما فكبراً ثلاثاً وثلاثين ، وسبحاً ثلاثاً وثلاثين ، واحمداً ثلاثاً وثلاثين » وفى رواية : « التسبيح أربعاً وثلاثين » وفى رواية : « التكبير أربعاً وثلاثين » .

قال على : فما تركته منذ سمعته من رسول الله ﷺ ، قيل له : ولا ليلة صفين ؟ قال : ولا ليلة صفين .

(٣) حديث صحيح : أخرجه أبو داود ( ٥٠٤٥ ) وابن السنن ( ٧٣٣٧ ) ،

والنسائى فى عمل اليوم والليلة ( ٤٥٢ ) والطبرانى فى المعجم الكبير ( ٣٩٤ ) =

○ وإذا فتحت عينيك من النوم فاعلم أن النفس قد أخذت حظها<sup>(١)</sup> ، فقم إلى الوضوء وصل في ظلام الليل ما أمكن ، واستفتح بركعتين خفيفتين ، ثم بعدهما ركعتين بجزعين من القرآن . ثم تعود إلى درس العلم ، فإن العلم أفضل من كل نافلة<sup>(٢)</sup> .

== من حديث حفصة أم المؤمنين رضی الله عنها أن رسول الله ﷺ كان إذا أراد أن يرقد وضع يده اليمنى تحت خده ثم يقول : « اللهم قنى عذابك يوم تبعث عبادك . ثلاث مرات » وقد حسنه الحافظ في نتائج الأفكار ( ص ١٩٣ ) وفي الباب عن البراء وحذيفة وابن مسعود ولذلك فالحديث يصير بهذه الشواهد صحيحاً والله أعلم .

(١) وأما هديه ﷺ في يقظته ، فكان يستيقظ إذا صاح الصَّارخُ وهو الديك فيحمد الله تعالى ويكبره ، ويهلله ويدعوه ، ثم يستاك ، ثم يقوم إلى وضوئه ثم يقف للصلاة بين يدي ربه ، مناجياً له بكلامه ، مثنياً عليه راجياً له ، راغياً راهباً ، فأئى حفظ لصحة البدن والقلب ، والروح والقوى ، ولنعيم الدنيا والآخرة فوق هذا . راجع زاد المعاد ( ٤ / ٢٤٦ ) .

(٢) فقد نصر على ذلك جمع كثير من الأئمة مثل الزهري وسفيان الثوري وأبو حنيفة والشافعي وغيرهم وراجع شرح حديث أبي الدرداء لابن رجب ص ( ٩٦ : ١٠٣ ) وقد حقق هذه المسألة تحقيقاً علمياً منصفاً ينفي لطالب العلم أن يتفهمه ويتخذ منهجاً له في حال طلبه للعلم .

قال رحمه الله « هذه مسألة مختلف فيها : هل طلب العلم أفضل أو صلاة النافلة والتلاوة والذكر ؟ فأما من كان مخلصاً لله في طلب العلم وذهنه جيد فالعلم أولى ، ولكن مع حظ من صلاة وتعب ، فإن رأيتك مجدداً في طلب العلم لاحظ له في القربات فهذا كسلان مهين وليس هو بصادق في حسن نيته ، وأما من كان طلبه الحديث والفقهاء ومجبة نفسانية فالعبادة في حقه أفضل بل ما بينهما أفضل تفضيل وهذا تقسيم في الجملة قلل — والله — من رأيتك مخلصاً في طلب العلم .. ا . هـ .

## فصل

### الْحَذَرُ مِنَ الْأَفَاتِ وَالْعَوَائِقِ

وعليك بالعزلة فهي أصل كل خير<sup>(١)</sup> ، واحذر من جليس السوء ،  
وليكن جلسائك الكتب والنظر في سير السلف ، ولا تشتغل بعلم حتى

---

(١) بوب الإمام البخارى فى صحيحه : باب العزلة راحة من خلاط السوء .  
واعلم أن اختلاف الناس فى هذا هو كاختلافهم فى فضيلة النكاح والعزوبة وأن  
ذلك يختلف باختلاف الأحوال والأشخاص .

ومن أهم ما ينبغى التنبيه عليه أن عزلة الجاهل وبال عليه وقد سئل بعض العلماء :  
ما تقول فى عزلة الجاهل ؟ فقال خيال ووبال ، فقيل له : فالعالم ؟ فقال مالك  
ولها دعها ، معها حذاؤها وسقاؤها ، برد الماء ، وتأكل الشجر حتى يلقاها ربها .  
وقد صنّف الإمام الخطايب رحمه الله كتاباً عظيماً فى العزلة ذكر فى آخره ( ص  
١١٧ ، ١١٨ ) ملخص الحق فى أمر العزلة فقال : « والطريقة المثلى فى هذا الباب  
أن لا تمتنع من حق يلزمك للناس وإن لم يطالبوك به ، وأن لا تنهك لهم فى  
باطل لا يجب عليك وإن دعوك إليه ، فإن من اشتغل بما لا يعنيه فاته ما يعنيه  
ومن انحل فى الباطل جمده عن الحق ، فكن مع الناس فى الخير وكن بمنزل عنهم  
فى الشر ، وتوخ أن تكون فيهم شاهداً ككتاب وعالم كجاهل » ا . هـ .

تُحَكِّمَ ما قبله ، وتلمَّح سير الكاملين فى العلم والعمل ، ولا تَقْنَعْ بالدون ،  
فقد قال الشاعر :

وَلَمْ أَرْ فى عُيُوبِ النَّاسِ شَيْئاً      كَتَفْصِرِ الْقَادِرِينَ عَلَى التَّمَامِ  
واعلم أن العلم يرفع الأراذل فقد كان خلق كثير من العلماء لا نسب  
لهم يُذَكَّر ، ولا صورة تُسْتَحْسَنُ .

وكان عطاء بن أبى رباح <sup>(١)</sup> أسود اللون مستوحش الخلقه ، وجاء  
إليه سليمان بن عبد الملك <sup>(٢)</sup> - وهو خليفة ، ومعه ولداه - فجلسوا

(١) عطاء بن أبى رباح أسلم قال الذهبى : « الإمام شيخ الإسلام ، مفتى الحرم ،  
أبو محمد القرشى مولاهم المكى ، يقال ولاؤه لبنى جُمَح كان من مؤلدى الجند  
ونشأ بمكة ، ولد فى أثناء خلافة عثمان » ا . هـ .

وكان عطاء أسود أعور أفتس أشل أعرج ثم عمى وكان ثقة فقيهاً ، عالماً كثير  
الحديث وكان من أعلم الناس بالمناسك ترجمته فى : طبقات ابن سعد ( ٥ / ٥ )  
( ٤٦٧ ) وتهذيب الكمال ( ٩٣٨ ) والعيبر ( ١ / ١٤١ ) والسير ( ٥ / ٧٨ )  
والبداية والنهاية ( ٩ / ٣٠٦ ) والعقد الثمين ( ٦ / ٨٤ ) وشذرات الذهب ( ١ /  
١٤٧ ) .

والأثر أخرجه الخطيب البغدادى فى الفقيه والمتفقه ( ١ / ٣١ ) وبوب على  
ذلك بقوله « ذكر من ارتفع من العيد حتى جلس مجالس الملوك » .

(٢) سليمان بن عبد الملك بن مروان بن الحكم بن أبى العاص بن أمية الخليفة  
أبو أيوب القرشى الأموى بويع بعد أخيه الوليد سنة ست وتسعين مات سنة ٩٩ هـ  
وخلافته ستان وتسعة أشهر وعشرون يوماً قال ابن سيرين : « یرحم الله سليمان  
افتتح خلافته بإحياء الصلاة واختتمها باستخلافه عمر بن عبد العزيز » . راجع =

يسألونه عن المناسك ، فحدّثهم وهو مُعْرِضٌ عنهم بوجهه ، فقال الخليفة لولديه : « قُومَا وَلَا تَبَيَّنَا وَلَا تُكَاسِلَا فِي طَلْبِ الْعِلْمِ ، فَمَا أُنْسَى ذُلَّتَا بَيْنَ يَدَي هَذَا الْعَبْدِ الْأَسْوَدِ . »

وكان الحسن مولى <sup>(١)</sup> - أى مملوكاً - وابن سيرين <sup>(٢)</sup>

=ترجمته فى : تاريخ الطبرى ( ٥٤٦ / ٦ ) والكامل لابن الاثير ( ٣٧ / ٥ ) ووفيات الأعيان ( ٢ / ٤٢٠ ، ٤٢٧ ) والعبر ( ١ / ١١٥ ، ١١٨ ) والبداية والنهاية ( ٩ / ١٨٣ ) وشذرات الذهب ( ١ / ١١٦ ) وسير أعلام النبلاء ( ٥ / ١١١ ) .  
(١) هو الحسن بن أبى الحسن يسار البصرى أبو سعيد مولى زيد بن ثابت قدوة العلماء الزهاد وأحد الأعلام من التابعين مات سنة ١١٠ هـ .

قال أبوب السخيتانى : « لو رأيت الحسن لقلت : إنك لم تجالس قبيها قط » . وقال أبو جعفر الباقر : « ذاك الذى يشبه كلامه كلام الأنبياء » ترجمته فى : طبقات ابن سعد ( ٧ / ١٥٦ ) والحلية ( ٢ / ١٣١ ) والزهد لأحمد ( ٢ / ٢٢٥ ) وسير أعلام النبلاء ( ٤ / ٥٦٣ ) وتذكرة الحفاظ ( ١ / ٦٦ ) وقد أفرد ابن الجوزى لهذا الإمام كتاباً فى سيرته ومناقبه وهو مطبوع متداول .

(٢) محمد بن سيرين هو الإمام شيخ الإسلام أبو بكر الأنصارى الأنسى البصرى مولى أنس بن مالك الصحابى خدام رسول الله ﷺ توفى سنة ١١٠ هـ .

قال أبو عوانة : رأيت محمد بن سيرين فى السوق ، فما رآه أحدٌ إلا ذكر الله ، راجع ترجمته فى : طبقات ابن سعد ( ٧ / ١٩٣ ) والحلية ( ٢ / ٢٦٣ ) وتاريخ بغداد ( ٥ / ٣٣١ ) وتذكرة الحفاظ ( ١ / ٧٣ ) والسير ( ٤ / ٦٠٦ ) والعبر ( ١ / ١٣٥ ) ومروءة الجنان ( ١ / ٢٣٢ ) والبداية والنهاية ( ٩ / ٢٦٧ ) وشذرات الذهب ( ١ / ١٣٨ ) .



ومكحول<sup>(١)</sup> وخلق كثير . وإنما شرفوا بالعلم والتقوى .

\* \* \*

---

(١) مكحول : عالم أهل الشام وهو مكحول بن أبي مسلم شهراب بن شاذل بن سند بن شروان بن يزدك بن ينفوخ بن كسرى . وأن محكولاً سبى من كابل واختلف فى ولاته فقيل : مولى امرأة هذلية ، وهو أصح . وعباده فى أوساط التابعين توفى سنة ١١٢ هـ وقيل ١١٣ هـ ، ١١٤ هـ قال ابو حاتم : « ما بالشام أحد أفقه من مكحول » راجع ترجمته فى : طبقات ابن سعد ( ٧ / ٤٥٣ ) وحلية الأولياء ( ٥ / ١٧٧ ) وتهذيب الأسماء واللغات ( ٢ / ١١٣ ، ١١٤ ) وسير أعلام النبلاء ( ٥ / ١٥٥ ) وتذكرة الحفاظ ( ١ / ١٠٧ ) والعبر ( ١ / ١٤٠ ) والبداية والنهاية ( ٩ / ٣٠٥ ) وحسن المحاضرة ( ١ / ١١٩ ) .

## فصل العفة عما في أيدي الناس

واجهد يا بني في صيانة عرضك من التعرض لطلب الدنيا والذل  
لأهلها ، واقع تعز<sup>(١)</sup> : « مَنْ قَنَعَ بِالْخُبْزِ وَالْبَقْلِ لَمْ يَسْتَعْبِدْهُ  
أَحَدٌ » .

ومرأ أعرابي على البصرة فقال : « مَنْ سَيِّدُ هَذِهِ الْبَلَدَةِ ؟ قِيلَ لَهُ : الْحَسَنُ  
الْبَصْرِيُّ ، قَالَ : وَيَمَّ سَادَتُهُمْ ؟ قَالُوا : لِأَنَّهُ اسْتَعْنَى عَنْ دُنْيَاهُمْ وَاقْتَصَرُوا إِلَيْ  
عَلَيْهِ »<sup>(٢)</sup> .

(١) قال الحافظ ابن رجب الحنبلي في شرح حديث أبي الدرداء ص ( ١٥٠ ) :  
( ١٥٢ ) : « إن من نشر علمه للناس وتكلم عليهم ينفي أن يكون ورعاً عما في  
أيديهم غير طامع في شيء من أموالهم ولأرزاقهم ولا اجتلاب قلوبهم إليه ، وإنما  
ينشر علمه لله ويتعفف عن الناس بالورع ... فالحرص على الدنيا والطمع فيها يبيح  
وهو من العلماء أقبح » ا . هـ .

(٢) القصة أوردها ابن رجب في شرح حديث أبي الدرداء « من سلك طريقاً  
يتمس فيه علماً » ص ( ١٥٤ ) . ورحم الله الحسن إذ يقول : إن لكل شيء شيئاً  
وشين العلم الطمع ، وما أحسن ما قال الإمام الخطابي في كتابه العزلة ص ( ٢٣٥ ) =

واعلم يا بنى أن أبى كان موسراً ، وخلف ألوفاً من المال ، فلما بَلَغَتْ  
 دفعوا لى عشرين ديناراً ودَازَيْنِ ، وقالوا لى : هذه التركة كلها ، فأخذت  
 الدنانير واشترت بها كتباً من كتب العلم ، وبعث الدارين ، وأنفقت ثمنها  
 فى طلب العلم ، ولم يبق لى شىء من المال <sup>(١)</sup> ، وماذُلُّ أبوك فى طلب  
 العلم قط ، ولا خرج يطوف فى البلدان كغيره من الوعاظ . ولا يعث رقعة  
 إلى أحد يطلب منه شيئاً قط . وأموره تجرى على السداد ﴿ وَمَنْ يَتَّقِ اللَّهَ  
 يَجْعَلْ لَهُ مَخْرَجاً ﴿١٥٦﴾ وَيَرْزُقْهُ مِنْ حَيْثُ لَا يَحْتَسِبُ ﴿١٥٧﴾ ﴾ [ الطلاق : ٢ ، ٣ ]

\* \* \*

عن الحسن البصرى : قال رحمه الله : « فمن له اليوم بمثل الحسن رحمة الله عليه  
 وإخلاص نصيحته وبلغ موعظته ، ولو صلحت منا الضمائر وصفت السرائر لوقعت  
 النصيحة موقعها والله يصلحنا ويصلح أمتنا فإن فسادهم بذنوبنا » ا . ه .

(١) روى الخطيب فى الفقيه والمتفقه ( ٢ / ٩٤ ) بإسناد صحيح عن الشافعى  
 رحمه الله قال : « يحتاج طالب العلم إلى ثلاث خصال : أولها طول العمر ،  
 والثانية : سعة اليد ، والثالثة : الذكاء » . قال الخطيب البغدادى رحمه الله : أما طول  
 العمر فإنما يقصد به دوام الملازمة للعلم وأراد بسعة اليد ألا يشتغل بالإحتراف وطلب  
 التكسب ، فإذا استعمل القناعة أغنته عن كثير من ذلك .. وإن رزقه الله تعالى الذكاء  
 فهو أمانة سعادته وسرعة بلوغه إلى بهيته » .

## فصل مَتَى صَحَّتْ التَّقْوَى رَأَيْتَ كُلَّ الْخَيْرِ

يا بني ، ومتى صَحَّتْ التقوى رأيت كل خير ، والمُتقى لا يرائي الخلق ولا يتعرض لما يُؤذى دينه ، ومن حفظ حدود الله حفظه الله ، قال رسول الله ﷺ لابن عباس رضی الله عنهما : « احفظ الله يحفظك احفظ الله تجده أمامك » (١) .

واعلم يا بني أن يونس عليه السلام لما كانت ذخيرته خيراً نجا بها من

الشدة .

(١) حَدِيثٌ صَحِيحٌ : أخرجه أحمد ( ١ / ٢٩٣ ، ٣٠٣ ، ٣٠٧ ) والترمذی ( ٢٥١٦ ) وقال الترمذی : « حديث حسن صحيح » وهو كما قال : وقد صححه الألبانی فی تخريج السنة لابن أبی عاصم ( ٣١٦ ، ٣١٧ ، ٣١٨ ) وللحديث طرق كثيرة وقد أفرد الحافظ ابن رجب فی شرح هذا الحديث مصنفاً رائعاً سماه : « نور الاقباس فی مشكاة وصية النبي ﷺ لابن عباس » .

قال الحافظ ابن الجوزی — صاحب هذه الوصية — فی كتابه صيد الخاطر : « تدبرت هذا الحديث فأدهشني وكدت أطيئ » ، ثم قال : « فوا أسفاً من الجهل بهذا الحديث ، وقلة الفهم لمعناه » ا . ه .

فعليك بمراجعة شرح هذا الحديث فإنه تضمن وصايا عظيمة وقواعد كلية من أهم أمور الدين وأجلها .

قال الله عز وجل : ﴿ فَلَوْلَا أَنَّهُ كَانَ مِنَ الْمُسْتَجِيبِينَ ﴿١٤٦﴾ لَلَبِثَ فِي بَطْنِهِ إِلَى يَوْمِ يُبْعَثُونَ ﴾ [ الصافات : ١٤٣ ، ١٤٤ ] وأما فرعون فلما لما تكن ذخيرته خيراً لم يجد في شدته مخلصاً فقبل له : ﴿ مَا كُنَّ وَقَدْ عَصَيْتَ قَبْلُ ﴾ [ يونس : ٩١ ] فاجعل لك ذخائر خير من تقوى تجد تأثيرها .

وقد جاء في الحديث : « مَا مِنْ شَابِّ الْقَلْبِ فِي شَبَابِهِ إِلَّا رَفَعَهُ اللَّهُ فِي كِبَرِهِ »<sup>(١)</sup> .

قال الله تعالى : ﴿ وَلَمَّا بَلَغَ أَشُدَّهُ آتَيْنَاهُ حُكْمًا وَعِلْمًا وَكَذَلِكَ نَجْزِي الْمُحْسِنِينَ ﴾ [ يوسف : ٢٢ ] .

وقال : ﴿ إِنَّهُ مَنْ يَتَّقِ وَيَصْبِرْ فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يُضِيعُ أَجْرَ الْمُحْسِنِينَ ﴾ [ يوسف : ٩٠ ]

واعلم أن أوفى الذخائر : غُضُّ الطرف عن محرم ، وإمساكُ للسان عن فضول كلمة ، ومراعاة لحدِّ ، وإيثار الله سبحانه وتعالى على هوى النفس ، وقد عرفت حديث الثلاثة الذين دخلوا إلى غار ، فانطبقت عليهم صخرة فقال أحدهم : « اللَّهُمَّ إِنَّهُ كَانَ لِي أَبَوَانِ وَأَوْلَادٌ ، فَكُنْتُ أَقْفُ بِالْحَلِيبِ عَلَى أَبِي أَسْفِيهِمَا قَبْلَ أَوْلَادِي ، فَإِنْ كُنْتُ فَعَلْتُ ذَلِكَ لِأَجْلِكَ فَافْرُجْ عَنَّا ، فَافْرَجْ ثَلْثَ الصَّخْرَةِ ، وقال الآخر : اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي اسْتَأْجَرْتُ أَجِيرًا فَسَخَطَ أَجْرَهُ ، فَاتَّجَرْتُ بِهِ ، فَجَاءَ يَوْمًا فَقَالَ : أَلَا تَخَافُ اللَّهَ وَتُعْطِينِي أَجْرَتِي ؟ فَقُلْتُ انْطَلِقْ إِلَيَّ بِتِلْكَ الْبَقْرِ وَرِعَائِهَا فَخُذْهَا ، فَإِنْ كُنْتُ فَعَلْتُ ذَلِكَ لِأَجْلِكَ » (١) راجع حلية الأولياء (١٣٩/٤) بنحوه .

فَأَفْرَجَ عَنَّا فَأَنْفَرَجَ ثُلُكَا الصَّخْرَةِ . فَقَالَ الْآخَرُ : اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي عَلَّقْتُ بِنْتِ عَمِّ لِي فَلَمَّا دَنَوْتُ مِنْهَا قَالَتْ : أَتَيْتُ اللَّهَ وَلَا تُفَضُّ الْحَائِمُ إِلَّا بِحَقِّهِ ، فَمُتُّ عَنْهَا . فَإِنْ كُنْتُ فَعَلْتُ ذَلِكَ لِأَجْلِكَ فَأَفْرَجْ عَنَّا ، فَرَفَعْتَ الصَّخْرَةَ وَخَرَجُوا ، <sup>(١)</sup> .

وروى سفيان الثوري <sup>(٢)</sup> رحمة الله عليه في المنام ، فقيل له : « مَا فَعَلَ اللَّهُ بِكَ ؟ قَالَ : مَا كَانَ إِلَّا وَضِعْتُ فِي اللَّحْدِ فَإِذَا أَنَا بَيْنَ يَدَيْ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ ، فَدَخَلْتُ فَإِذَا أَنَا بِقَائِلٍ يَقُولُ : سَفِيَانُ ؟ قُلْتُ : سَفِيَانُ . قَالَ : تَذَكَّرَ يَوْمًا أَثَرَتِ اللَّهُ عَلَيَّ هَوَاكَ ؟ قُلْتُ : نَعَمْ ، فَأَخَذْتَنِي صَوَانِي النَّكَارِ مِنَ الْجَنَّةِ . »

\* \* \*

(١) أخرجه البخاري : كتاب الإجارة : باب من استأجر أجيراً ترك أجره ... ( ٢٢٧٢ ) ومسلم : كتاب الذكر والدعاء والتوبة والاستغفار : باب قصة أصحاب الغار الثلاثة ، والتوسل بصالح الأعمال . ( ٢٧٤٣ ) ( ١٠٠ ) من حديث ابن عمر رضی الله عنهما .

(٢) سفيان بن سعيد بن مسروق الثوري أبو عبد الله الكوفي . ثقة حافظ فقيه عابد إمام حجة مات سنة ٢٦١ هـ وكان رحمه الله أزهدهم الناس في الدنيا في زمانه حتى كان يتعري بمجلسه عن الدنيا ويقال أنه لم يكن في زمانه من هو أخوف لله منه ولا من هيبه الله في صدره اعظم منه قال الحافظ الذهبي في تذكرة الحفاظ ( ١ / ٢٠٦ ) : « مناقب هذا الإمام في مجلد لابن الجوزي وقد اختصرته وسقت جملة حسنة من ذلك في تاريخي ١٤ هـ . وترجمة هذا الإمام الجليل تجدها في الحلية في حوالي مائة وثمانين صفحة ( ٦ / ٣٥٦ ) حتى ( ٧ / ١٤٤ ) وفي سير أعلام النبلاء ( ٧ / ٢٢٩ ) وفي تاريخ بغداد ( ٩ / ١٥١ - ١٧٤ ) .

## فصل من سير السلف الصالح

وينبغي أن تسمو همتك إلى الكمال ، فإن خلقتا وقفوا مع الزهد ، وخلقنا  
تشاغلوا بالعلم ، وندر أقوام جمعوا بين العلم الكامل والعمل الكامل .

واعلم أني قد تصفحتُ التابعين ومن بعدهم فما رأيت أحظي بالكمال  
من أربعة أنفس : سعيد بن المسيب<sup>(١)</sup> ، والحسن البصري ، وسفيان  
الثوري ، وأحمد بن حنبل رضي الله عنهم<sup>(٢)</sup> ، وقد كانوا رجالاً . وإنما

---

(١) سعيد بن المسيب أبو محمد القرشي المخزومي الإمام العلم عالم أهل المدينة  
وسيد التابعين في زمانه توفي سنة ٧٣ هـ .

قال الحافظ الذهبي في السير ( ٤ / ٢١٩ ) : « وكان يمين برز في العلم  
والعمل ، راجع ترجمته في الحلية ( ٢ / ١٦١ ) ، وسير أعلام النبلاء ( ٤ / ٢١٧ :  
٢٤٦ ) ، وتذكرة الحافظ ( ١ / ٥١ ) وطبقات ابن سعد ( ٥ / ١١٩ ) وقد أفرد  
لمناقبه وسيرته ابن الجوزي كتاباً في جزأين كما في سير أعلام النبلاء ( ٢١ /  
٣٦٩ ) وفي الذيل ( ١ / ٤١٨ ) « مجلد » .

(٢) الإمام أحمد بن حنبل ذلك الإمام الرباني والصديق الثاني الثابت عند المحن  
والشدائد امتحن رحمه الله في فتنه خلق القرآن أيام الخليفة المأمون ثبت ولم يجب =

كانت لهم همم ضَعُفَتْ عندنا ، وقد كان في السلف خلق كثير لهم همم عالية ، فإذا أردت أن تنظر إلى أحوالهم فانظر في كتاب « صفة الصفوة »<sup>(١)</sup> إن شئت تأمل أخبار سعيد والحسن وسفيان وأحمد رضى الله عنهم<sup>(٢)</sup> فقد جمعت لكل واحد منهما كتاباً .

\* \* \*

---

= ونال بذلك الرفعة في الدنيا والآخرة وقد أفرد ابن الجوزى في مناقبه وسيرته مصنفاً جيداً فليراجع .

(١) طبع هذا الكتاب : الجزء الأول مطبعة الأصيل بحلب سنة ١٣٨٩ هـ والثاني بمطبعة النهضة الجديدة بمصر سنة ١٣٩٠ هـ والثالث بمطبعة وكالة الصحف بمصر سنة ١٣٩٣ هـ والرابع بمطبعة دار الشعب بمصر سنة ١٣٩٣ هـ وتوالت الطبعات .  
(٢) وقد وصفهم أيضاً الحافظ ابن رجب في « شرح حديث أبي الدرداء فيمن سلك طريقاً يلتمس فيه علماً » ص ( ٥٢ ، ٥٣ ) « بالعلماء الربانيين علماء الآخرة » .



# فصل الحفظ رأس مال

وقد علمت يا بني أنني قد صنفت مائة كتاب<sup>(١)</sup>، فمنها «التفسير الكبير» عشرون مجلداً<sup>(٢)</sup>، و«التاريخ» عشرون مجلداً، و«تهذيب

(١) لعل هذا الكلام حتى كتابه رحمه الله هذه السطور وإلا فإنه صنّف أكثر من ذلك وقد عدّ له شيخ الإسلام ابن تيمية أكثر من ألف مصنف وقال الذهبي: «وما علمت أحداً من العلماء صنّف ما صنّف هذا الرجل» وراجع أسماء مصنّفاته في سير أعلام النبلاء وذيل طبقات الحنابلة وقد ألف الأستاذ عبد الحميد العلوجي كتاباً أسماه مؤلفات ابن الجوزي طبع شركة دار الجمهورية ببغداد سنة ١٣٩٥ هـ فليراجع مع العلم بأن هناك كتباً كثيرة طبعت بعد صدور هذا الكتاب والله تعالى يوفق المسلمين لإخراج هذا التراث العظيم.

(٢) قال الذهبي في السير (٢١ / ٣٦٨): «صنف في التفسير المغني» — كبير، ثم اختصره في أربع مجلدات، وسمّاه: «زاد المسير» ١. هـ.

وقال ابن رجب في ذيل طبقات الحنابلة (١ / ٤١٦): «كتاب المغني» في التفسير أحد وثمانون جزءاً، كتاب «زاد المسير في علم التفسير» أربع مجلدات ١. هـ.

وقد تم طبع زاد المسير بالمكعب الإسلامي سنة ١٣٦٤ هـ (١٩٦٤ م) في تسعة أجزاء بتحقيق زهير الشاويش.

المسند ، عشرون مجلداً وباقي الكتب بين كبار وصغار يكون خمس مجلدات ، ومجلدين وثلاثة وأربعة وأقل وأكثر ، كفتيك بهذه التصانيف عن استعارة الكتب وجمع الهمم في التأليف ، فعليك بالحفظ ، وإنما الحفظ رأس المال والتصرف ربح . واصدق في الحالين في الإلتجاء إلى الحق سبحانه فراع حدوده . قال الله تعالى : ﴿ إِن نَّصَرُواْ وَاللَّهُ يَصِّرْكُمْ ﴾

[ محمد : ٧ ] ، ﴿ فَأَذْكُرُواْ فِيْ أذْكُرْكُمْ ﴾ [ البقرة : ١٥٢ ]

﴿ وَأَوْفُواْ بِعَهْدِيْ أَوْفِ بِعَهْدِكُمْ ﴾ [ البقرة : ٤٠ ]

وإياك أن تفهم مع صورة العلم دون العمل به . فإن الداخلين على الأمراء والمقبلين على أهل الدنيا قد أعرضوا عن العمل بالعلم فمُنِعُوا البركة والتفجع

. به

\* \* \*

## فصل العلم والعمل متلازمان

وإيّاك أن تتشاغل بالتعب من غير علم ، فإن خلقاً كثيراً من المتزهدين والمتصوفة ضلّوا طريق الهدى إذ عملوا بغير علم (١) .

واستر نفسك بثوبين جميلين لا يُشهرانك بين أهل الدنيا برفعتيهما !  
ولا بين المتزهدين بضعفهما ، وحاسب نفسك عند كل نظرة وكلمة

---

(١) روى ابن عبد البر في جامع بيان العلم ص ( ٥٤ ) والخطيب في الفقيه والمتفقه ( ١ / ١٩ ) وابن أبي شيبة في المصنف ( ١٣ / ٤٧٠ ) أن عمر بن عبد العزيز رضی الله عنه قال : « من عمل على غير علم كان ما يفسد أكثر مما يصلح » وروى ابن عبد البر أيضاً ( ص ٢١٥ ) وابن أبي شيبة ( ١٣ / ٤٩٩ ) أن الحسن البصرى رحمه الله قال : « اطلب العلم طلباً لا يضرّ بالعبادة ، واطلب العبادة طلباً لا يضرّ بالعلم ؛ فإن من عمل بغير علم كان ما يفسد أكثر مما يصلح » . وقال العلامة ابن القيم في مفتاح دار السعادة : ( ١ / ٨٢ ، ٨٣ ) : « إن العامل بلا علم كالسائر بلا دليل ومعلوم أن عطب مثل هذا أقرب من سلامته ، وإن قدر سلامته اتفاقاً فهو غير محمود ، بل هو مذموم عند العقلاء وكان شيخ الإسلام ابن تيمية يقول : « من فارق الدليل ضلّ السبيل ، ولا دليل إلا بما جاء به الرسول » . ا . ه .

وَعَطْوَةٌ فَإِنَّكَ مَسْئُولٌ عَنْ ذَلِكَ ، وَعَلَى قَدْرِ انْتِفَاعِكَ بِالْعِلْمِ يَنْتَفِعُ السَّامِعُونَ ، وَمَتَى لَمْ يَعْمَلِ الْوَاعِظُ بِعِلْمِهِ زَلَّتْ مَوْعِظَتُهُ عَنِ الْقُلُوبِ كَمَا يَزُلُّ الْمَاءُ عَنِ الْحَجَرِ <sup>(١)</sup> .

فَلَا تَعْظَنْ إِلَّا بِنِيَّةٍ وَلَا تَمْشِينَ إِلَّا بِنِيَّةٍ ، وَلَا تَأْكُلْنَ لِقْمَةً إِلَّا بِنِيَّةٍ <sup>(٢)</sup> ،  
 وَمَعَ مِطَالَعَةِ أَحْوَاقِ السَّلَفِ يَتَكَشَّفُ لَكَ الْأَمْرُ .

\* \* \*

(١) أخرج الخطيب البغدادي في اقتضاء العلم بالعمل ( ٩٧ ) من طريق جعفر عن مالك قال : قرأت في التوراة : « إن العالم إذا لم يعمل بعلمه زلت موعظته عن القلوب كما يزول القطر عن الصفا » .

وقال ابن الجوزي في اليواقيت الجوزية ص ( ٩٥ ) : « العلم والعمل توعمان أهمهما علو الهمة » .

(٢) راجع الكلام على النية وتعظيم أمرها في جامع العلوم والحكم ص ( ٢٠ ) ،

## فصل من روائع النصائف

وعليك بكتاب « منهاج المریدین » <sup>(١)</sup> فإنه يُعلّمك السلوك ، فاجعله جليساك ومعلمك وتلمح كتاب « صيد الخاطر » <sup>(٢)</sup> فإنك تقع بواقعات

(١) وقد صنّف ابن الجوزي كتابا في المعاملات اختصره من إحياء علوم الدين وأسماه « منهاج القاصدين » ذكر في كتابه القصاص والمذكرين ص ( ٣٧٢ ) أنه في شرح المعاملات وهذا الكتاب لم يطبع حتى الآن ومنه نسخ خطية في باريس ( ١٢٩٥ ) وتركيا ( الفاتح : ٢٨٧٢ ) والظاهرية ( ٢٤ - تصوف ) وقد طبع مختصر له . ولا أدري هل منهاج القاصدين غير منهاج المریدین ؟ فالله أعلم . وقد ذكر الحافظ الذهبي أن منهاج القاصدين مجلدان وذكر ابن رجب أنه أربع مجلدات .

(٢) كتاب صيد الخاطر من الكتب التي صنّفها الحافظ ابن الجوزي فجعلها قيدا لصيد الخاطر وما يدور على نفسه من أمور وفكر كان من الأولى حفظها لكيلا تنسى كما ذكر ذلك في مقدمة الكتاب . والكتاب ذكر الذهبي أنه ثلاث مجلدات وذكر ابن رجب أنه خمسة وستون جزءاً وقد طبع الكتاب بدار الكتب الحديثة بتحقيق محمد الغزالي وطبع بمكتبة الكليات الأزهرية بتحقيق عبد القادر أحمد عطا وقد أساء فيها عبارات ما ينبغي أن تكون للحافظ ابن الجوزي وكذا طبع الكتاب ببירות بتحقيق سيد الجميلي وقد علق تعليقات خاطفة ما كان له أن يتجرأ بكتابتها على الكتاب . نسأل الله العافية . وطبع بدار الفكر بدمشق بتحقيق علي وناجي الطنطاوي وغير ذلك من الطبّعات .

تُصلح لك أمر دينك ودينك ، وتحفظ كتاب « جنة النظر »<sup>(١)</sup> فإنه يكفى فى تلقيح فهمك للفقہ . ومتى تشاغلت بكتاب « الحدائق »<sup>(٢)</sup> أطلعك على جمهور الحديث ، وإذا التفت إلى كتاب « الكشف »<sup>(٣)</sup> أبان لك مستور ما فى الصحيحين من الحديث .

ولا تتشاغلن بكتب التفسير التى صنفها الأعاجم ، وما ترك « المعنى » و « زاد المسير » لك حاجة فى شىء من التفسير . وأما ما جمعته لك من كتب الوعظ فلا حاجة لك بعدها إلى زيادة أصلاً<sup>(٤)</sup> .

(١) ذكره الحافظ ابن رجب فى ذيل طبقات الحنابلة ( ١ / ٤١٨ ) : وقال :  
« وهى التعليقة الوسطى » ا . ه .

(٢) ذكره الذهبى أنه مجلدان وذكر ابن رجب أنه أربعة وثلاثون جزءاً وذكر ابن الجوزى فى آخر كتابه القصاص والمذكرين ص ( ٣٧٢ ) : أن هذا الكتاب غاية الواعظ ، وللكتاب نسخ خطية بدار الكتب المصرية .

(٣) ذكره الحافظ ابن رجب فى الذيل ( ١ / ٤١٧ ) وسماه : « الكشف لمشكل الصحيحين » أربع مجلدات .

(٤) قال الحافظ ابن الجوزى فى كتابه القصاص والمذكرين ص ( ٣٧١ ) ، ( ٣٧٢ ) : « وقد جمعت فى آلات الوعظ كتباً لم ، أسبق إلى مثلها من تفاسير القرآن المهدية من الزلل ، السليجة من الأحاديث المصنوعة ، منها : كتاب « زاد المسير فى علم التفسير » وأكبر منه « المعنى » ... وأما كتب الوعظ فكثيرة يطول تعدادها ، منها « تبصرة المبتدىء » و « كنز المذكر » ، و « اللؤلؤ » ، و « الملح » ، و « المدهش » ، و « الملهب » ، و « صبايخ الجد » ، و « نسيم الرياض » ، و « المنتخب » وغيرها .

وبعض هذه الكتب تبنى الواعظ وتكفيه طول عمره ، ولا يحتاج معه إلى زخارف قد ألّفها الأعاجم أكثرها كذب وهذيان » ا . ه .

## فصل صفة الواعظ النافع

وَكُنْ حَسَنَ الْمُدَارَاةِ لِلخَلْقِ مَعَ شِدَّةِ الْاِعْتِرَالِ عَنْهُمْ ، فَإِنَّ الْعِزْلَةَ رَاحَةً مِنْ خَلْطَاءِ السُّوءِ وَمُبْقِيَةٌ لِلْوَقَارِ . فَإِنَّ الْوَاعِظَ — خَاصَّةً — يَنْبَغِي لَهُ أَنْ لَا يُرَى مُتَبَدِّلاً وَلَا مَاشِئاً فِي السُّوقِ وَلَا ضَاحِكاً ، لِيَحْسِنَ بِهِ الظَّنَّ فَيَنْتَفِعُ بِوَعْظِهِ <sup>(١)</sup> ، فَإِذَا اضْطُرَّ إِلَى مُخَالَطَةِ النَّاسِ فَيَخَالِطُهُمْ بِالْحِلْمِ عَنْهُمْ ، فَإِنَّكَ إِنْ كَشَفْتَ عَنْ أَخْلَاقِهِمْ لَمْ تَقْدِرْ عَلَى مَدَارَاتِهِمْ .

\* \* \*

(١) قال ابن الجوزي في الصيد ص ( ٢٣٢ ) : « ما أعرف للعالم قط لذة ولا عزاً ولا شرفاً ولا راحة ولا سلامة أفضل من العزلة فإنه ينال بها سلامة بدنه ودينه وجاهه عند الله عز وجل وعند الخلق ؛ لأن الخلق يهون عليهم من يخالطهم ، ولا يعظم عندهم قدر المخالط لهم ، ولهذا عظم قدر الخلفاء لاحتجاجهم . وإذا رأى العوام أحد العلماء مترخصاً في أمر مباح هان عندهم ، فالواجب عليه صيانة علمه وإقامة قدر العلم عندهم فقد قال بعض السلف : « كنا نمزح ونضحك ، فإذا صرنا يقتدى بنا فما أراه يسعنا ذلك » .

وقال سفيان الثوري : « تعلموا هذا العلم واكظموا عليه ، ولا تخططوه بهزل قسُّمُجِه القلوب » ا . ه .

## فصل أداء الحقوق

وأذ إلى كل ذى حَقِّ حَقِّه ، مِنْ زَوْجَةٍ وولِدٍ وقرَابَةٍ . وانظر كل ساعة من ساعاتك بماذا تذهب ، فلا تودعها إِلَّا أَشْرَفَ ما يمكن ، ولا تُهْجِلْ نفسك ، وعودها أَشْرَفَ ما يكون من العمل وأحسنه ، وابعث إلى صندوق القبر ما يسرك يوم الوصول إليه كما قيل :

يَا مَنْ بَدَيْتَاهُ اشْتَغَلْ      وَغَرَّهُ طُولُ الْأَمَلِ  
الْمَوْتُ يَأْتِي بَحْثَةً      وَالْقَبْرُ صِنْدُوقُ الْعَمَلِ  
وَرَأَى عَوَاقِبَ الْأُمُورِ يَهْنُ عَلَيْكَ الصَّبْرُ عَنْ كُلِّ مَا تَشْتَهَى وَمَا تَكْرَهُ ،  
وإن وجدت من نفسك غفلة فاحمِلْهَا إِلَى المقابر وذكرها قرب الرحيل ،  
وَدَبِّرْ أَمْرَكَ - وَاللَّهُ الْمُدَبِّرُ - فِي إِنْفَاقِكَ مِنْ غَيْرِ تَبْذِيرٍ ، لئلا تحتاج إلى  
الناس ، فَإِنَّ حِفْظَ الْمَالِ مِنَ الدِّينِ ، « وَلَأنَّ تَخْلُفَ لَوْرَثِيكَ خَيْرٌ مِنْ  
أَنْ تَحْتَاجَ إِلَى النَّاسِ » (١) .

\* \* \*

(١) ففي الحديث « إِنَّكَ أَنْ تَذَرَ وَرَثَتَكَ أَغْنِيَاءَ خَيْرٌ مِنْ أَنْ تَذَرَهُمْ عَالَةً يَتَكَفَّفُونَ  
الناس » رواه البخارى ( ٢٧٤٢ ) ومسلم ( ١٦٢٨ ) ( ٨٥ ) من حديث سعد بن  
أبى وقاص رضى الله عنه .



## فصل خاتمة حسنة

يا بني واعلم أننا من أولاد أبي بكر الصديق رضی الله عنه <sup>(١)</sup> وأبونا القاسم محمد بن عبد الرحمن بن أبي بكر بن محمد بن أبي بكر رضی الله عنه <sup>(٢)</sup> . وأخباره مؤثقة في كتاب « صفة الصفوة » ثم تشاغل سلفنا

---

(١) هكذا نسيه رحمه الله : أبو الفرج عبد الرحمن بن علي بن محمد بن علي بن عبيد الله بن عبد الله بن حماد بن أحمد بن محمد بن جعفر بن عبد الله بن القاسم بن النضر بن القاسم بن محمد بن عبد الله بن الفقيه عبد الرحمن بن الفقيه القاسم بن محمد بن خليفة رسول الله ﷺ أبي بكر الصديق ، القرشي التيمي البكري البغدادي .

(٢) الإمام القدوة الحافظ الحجة ، عالم وقته بالمدينة مع سالم وعكرمة ، أبو محمد وأبو عبد الرحمن القرشي ولد في خلافة الإمام علي ورؤي القاسم في حجر عمته أم المؤمنين عائشة وتفقها منها وأكثر عنها مات سنة ٧ هـ .

ترجمته في : طبقات ابن سعد ( ١٨٧ / ٥ ) وطبقات خليفة ( ٣٤٤ ) وحلية الأولياء ( ١٨٣ / ٢ ) وتهذيب الأسماء واللغات ( ٥٥ / ٢ ) وتذكرة الحفاظ ( ٩٦ / ١ ) والعبير ( ١٣٢ / ١ ) وسير أعلام النبلاء ( ٥٤ / ٥ ) وشذرات الذهب ( ١٣٥ / ١ ) . وراجع صفة الصفوة ( ٨٨ / ٢ ) .

بالتجارة والبيع والشراء ، فما كان من المتأخرين من رُزِقَ همةً في طلب العلم غيرى ، وقد آل الأمر إليك ، فاجتهد أن لا تُخَيِّبَ ظنِّي فيما رجوته فيك ولك ، وقد أسلَمْتُكَ إلى الله سبحانه وتعالى ، وإياه أسأل أن يوفقك للعلم والعمل .

وهذا قدر اجتهادى فى وصيتى ، ولا حول ولا قوة إلا بالله العلى العظيم .

والحمد لله مزيد الحامدين ، وصلى الله على سيدنا مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلى آله وصحبه وسلّم<sup>(١)</sup> .

\* \* \*

---

(١) ونسأل الله تعالى أن ينفعنا بهذه الوصية وأن ينفع بها سائر المسلمين وأن يغفر لكتابها ولمن كتب إليه وقارئها وناشرها ومن علّق عليها ومن دعا الناس إليها وحضّمهم على العمل بما فيها وتم التعليق عليها فى يوم الجمعة المبارك سنة ١٤٠٩ هـ مدينة الاسماعيلية والحمد لله الذى بنعمته تتم الصالحات وصلى الله على محمد وآله . أبو الحارث أشرف بن عبد المقصود بن عبدالرحيم غفر الله له ولوالديه لسائر المسلمين .

## APPENDIX

### Persons Cited in the Text

'Ā'ISHAH: bint Abū Bakr *as-Ṣiddīq*, the Mother of the Believers and most beloved wife of the Prophet (ﷺ). She reported many *ahādīth* from the Prophet and many Companions and Successors reported from her. She died in the year 58H.

'ABDULLĀH BIN 'ABBĀS: ibn 'Abdul-Muṭṭalib ibn Hāshim ibn 'Abd Munāf al-Qurashī al-Hāshimī, the cousin of the Prophet (ﷺ) and the interpreter of the Qur'ān. He was born three years before the *Hijrah* and was called the 'Ocean of Knowledge' due to his vast knowledge. He took part in the *Jihād* in North Africa in the year 27H and died in the year 68H.

'ABDULLĀH AL-DĀMAGHĀNĪ: The profound scholar, the mufti of 'Iraq, the judge, Abū 'Abdullāh Muḥammad ibn 'Alī ibn Muḥammad ibn Hasan ibn 'Abd al-Wahhāb ibn Husawayhi al-Dāmaghānī al-Hanāfi (Dāmaghānī refers to somebody from Dāmaghān which is a big city between al-Rayy and Naysābur). al-Dhahabī said: 'He was a person of nobility and great decency and has been compared to judge Abū Yūsuf in his times.

Among his children were Imāms and judges.' He died in 478 and his son, the judge of judges Abū al-Ḥasan led his funeral prayer. For his biography, refer to: *Tārikh Baghdād*, 3/109, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 12/129, *Shatharāt al-Dhabab*, 3/362, *al-Fawa'id al-Babiyyah*, 182-183, *al-Kāmil*, 10/146, *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 18/485, *al-'Ibar*, 3/292.

'ABDULLĀH BIN MAS'ŪD: ibn Ghāfil ibn Ḥabīb al-Hadhli Abū 'Abdur-Raḥmān. One of the scholars amongst the Companions and he witnessed *Badr* and the following battles. He had many virtues and died in the year 32H.

'ABDULLĀH BIN 'UMAR: ibn al-Khaṭṭāb al-'Adawī, Abū 'Abdur-Raḥmān, the noble Companion and scholar. He reported many *ahādīth* from the Messenger (ﷺ) and died in the year 73H.

ABŪ BAKR AL-ṢIDDĪQ: 'Abdullāh ibn 'Uthmān ibn Āmir al-Qurashī. The first *Khalīfah* of the Messenger (ﷺ), his companion in the cave, his closest friend and one of the ten promised Paradise. He was the first man to accept Islām and died in the year 13H.

ABŪ AD-DARDĀ': Uwaymir ibn Mālik ibn Zayd ibn Qays al-Khazrajī al-Anṣārī. There is a difference of opinion concerning his name. He accepted Islām on the day of *Badr* and witnessed *Uḥud*. He was from the Legal Jurists and ascetics of the Companions. He died in the year 32H.

ABŪ DĀWŪD: Sulaymān ibn al-Ash'ath ibn Ishāq ibn Bashīr, Abū Dāwūd al-Sijistānī, the *Imām*, *Hāfiẓ* and author of the famous *Sunan*. He died in the year 275H.

ABŪ AL-FADL IBN NĀṢIR: The *Imām*, Muḥaddith and Ḥāfiẓ,

Mufīd al-‘Irāq, Abū al-Faḍl Muḥammad ibn Nāsir ibn Muḥammad ibn ‘Alī ibn ‘Amm al-Salāmī from Baghdād (467-551). Al-Ḥāfiẓ ibn al-Jawzī benefitted in the field of ḥadīth by accompanying this Imām as indicated by Dhahabī (*Siyar al-A‘lām al-Nubulā’*, 21/367) and confirmed by al-Ḥāfiẓ ibn al-Jawzī himself (*al-Muntaẓam*, 10/163). Al-Dhahabī also related this from him (*al-Mizān*, 20/267), saying: He said: ‘Our shaikh was reliable, a man of good memory and precision. He was from *Ahl al-Sunnah wa al-Jamā‘ah* and had not faults worth mentioning. He was responsible of hearing me. I heard the *Musnad* of Aḥmad and the major books in his reading and it was he whom I took the science of ḥadīth from. He would remember Allāh a lot and was quick to shed tears.’ For his biography, refer to: *Siyar al-A‘lām al-Nubulā’*, 20/265, *Tathkīrat al-Huffāẓ*, 3/1289, *Manāqib Aḥmad*, 530, 531, *Mir‘at al-Zamān*, 8/138, *Thail Tabaqāt al-Ḥanabila*, 1/225-229, *al-Bidāyah wa’l-Nibāyah*, 12/233.

ABŪ HURAYRAH: ‘Abdur-Raḥmān ibn Ṣakhr ad-Dusī. His name is greatly differed over. He accepted Islām in the year 7H and reported the most ḥadīth from the Prophet (ﷺ). He died in the year 59H.

‘ALĪ BIN ABĪ ṬĀLIB: ibn ‘Abdul-Muṭṭalib ibn Hāshim al-Qurashī al-Hāshimī, the fourth Rightly Guided *Khalīfah* and one of ten promised Paradise. He accepted Islām at the age of thirteen and was famous for his chivalry, bravery and knowledge. He married Fāṭimah, the daughter of the Prophet (ﷺ) and was martyred in the year 40H.

AL-BARĀ’A BIN MĀLIK: ibn an-Naḍr al-Anṣārī. He witnessed *Uḥud* and gave the pledge of allegiance under the tree. He

was martyred in the year 20H on the Day of *Tustor*.

**ABŪ ḤĀKIM IBRĀHĪM IBN DINĀR:** The great exemplary scholar Abū Ḥākīm Ibrāhīm ibn Dinār al-Nahruwānī al-Ḥanbalī, one of the Imāms of Baghdād, a godly ascetic, who was benevolent and forbearing. He was one of the greatest scholars in the field of inheritance. He established a school by *Bāb al-Azaj inqata'a bihā yata'abbadu*. He preferred to be unknown, and was always content with his condition. He used to earn his bread as a tailor, taking only two coins for a garment. Some individuals attempted to anger him but to no avail, and he would serve the disabled and old timers with a joyful face. His hearing of ḥadīth was correct. He passed away in 556 AH. (al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī: *Siyar al-A'lam al-Nubulā'*, 20/396. For his biography, refer to: Ibn al-Jawzī: *al-Muntaẓam*, 10/201, 202, *Thail Tabaqāt al-Ḥanabila*, 1/231-241, *Shatbarāt al-Thahab*, 4/176, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 12/245)

**ABŪ AL-KHAṬṬĀB:** The Shaikh, Imām and great God fearing scholar of the Ḥanbalites, Abū al-Khaṭṭāb Maḥfūẓ ibn Aḥmad ibn Ḥasan ibn Ḥasan al-'Irāqī al-Kalwadhānī at first, then al-Baghdādī later on (d. 510 AH). Al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī said: 'Abū al-Khaṭṭāb was a fine scholar. He was benevolent, truthful, well mannered and spoke extraordinarily eloquent Arabic. He was a smart man who narrated many aḥādīth and studied and recorded ḥadīth as well.' Ibn Rajab said (*al-Thail*, 1/120): 'Abū al-Khaṭṭāb was a great jurist who used to focus much on verification of matters. He has checked and investigated numerous matters of jurisprudence and legal theory and differs with the majority view of the Ḥanbalites in some issues.' After this he went on to mention many examples of that. For his biography, refer to: *Siyar al-A'lam al-Nubulā'*, 19/348, Ibn al-Jawzī:

*al-Muntazam*, 9/190-193, *al-Kāmil*, 10/524, *al-Ibar*, 4/21, *Mir'at al-Zamān*, 8/41-42, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 12/180, *Thail Tabaqāt al-Hanabila*, 1/116-127, *Shathbarāt al-Thahab*, 4/27-28.

ABŪ MUḤ AMMAD AL-HALĀWĀNĪ: The jurist 'Abdu'l-Rahmān ibn Muḥammad ibn 'Alī ibn Muḥammad al-Halāwānī, the jurist and Imam Abu Muḥammad ibn Abī al-Fath. Al-Munthirī said: 'He was one of scholars of the Hanbalites and was versed in jurisprudence, Qur'ānic exegesis and ḥadīth.' Ibn Rajab said: 'I saw something that was written in his handwriting and that indicates that he has authored a major commentary on the differed upon issues. He has also written a 41 volume commentary on the Qur'ān which he has talked about.' For his biography, refer to: Ibn Rajab: *Thail Tabaqāt al-Hanabila*, 1/221.

AḤMAD IBN ḤANBAL: Ibn Hilāl ash-Shaybānī, Abū 'Abdullāh, the *Imām* of the *Sunnah* and author of the famous *Musnad*. He was known for his knowledge of ḥadīth, *fiqh*, and his *taqwā* and asceticism. He was put to test in the days of Caliph al-Ma'mūn concerning the calamity of Qur'ān's creation. He stood firm and did not answer the way he was told to, and by this earned a high position in this world and the Hereafter. Ibn al-Jawzī has dedicated a volume to his life and virtues, so refer to it. He died in the year 241H.

'ĀMIR IBN 'ABD QAIS: Imām Abū 'Abd Allāh (and it is said: Abū 'Amr) al-Tamīmī al-'Anbarī 'Amir ibn 'Abd Qais al-Baṣrī. Al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī described him as: The example, the *walī* and the ascetic. He is one of the eight leading *Tabi'in* in asceticism. Ka'b al-Ahbār once saw him and said: 'This is the devotee of this nation.' Qātada said: 'When 'Amir was on the verge of death he cried.' He was asked: 'Why are you crying?' so he

said: 'I am not crying because I fear death or crave this world. It is the thirst of the midday heat and the standing at night that I cry for.' He is said to have died in the time of Mu'awiya. (Refer to his biography: Ibn Sa'd: *al-Tabaqāt*, 7/103, Aḥmad: *al-Zuhd*, 218, *Ḥilyatu'l-Auliya'*, 2/87, *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 4/15, 'Alqama ibn Murthid: *Zuhd al-Thamaniya min al-Tabi'in*, p. 37-40.)

'ATĀ IBN ABŪ RABĀḤ: 'Atā ibn Abū Rabāḥ Aslam. Al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī said: "The Imām, Shaikh al-Islām and the Mufti of Harām, Abū Muḥammad al-Qurashī, their freed slave from Makkah. His loyalty is said to have been for people of Jumāḥ. He was raised with al-Janad and grew up in Makkah. He was born during the caliphate of 'Uthmān.' 'Atā was black, one eyed, snub-nosed, lame and limping and finally became blind as well. He was a trustworthy narrator, a jurist, a scholar, a narrator of many Hadeeths and was the most knowledgeable concerning the rules of pilgrimage. Refer to his biography: Ibn Sa'd: *al-Tabaqāt*, 5/467, *Tadhib al-Kāmal*, 938, *al-'Ibar*, 1/141, *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 5/78, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 9/306, *al-'Aqd al-Thamīn*, 6/84, *Sbatharāt al-Thabab*, 1/147. The narration was related by: al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādī: *al-Faqih wa al-Mutafaqqih*, 1/31, who made this chapter heading regarding it: 'Those who rised from being slaves to sitting in the gatherings of the kings.'

BUKHĀRĪ: Muḥammad bin Ismā'īl bin Ibrāhīm bin al-Mughīrah, Abū 'Abdullāh. He was born in the year 194H and became one of the *Imāms* of ḥadīth and was nicknamed 'The Leader of the Believers in Ḥadīth.' He died in the year 256H.

AL-ḤASAN IBN ABŪ'L-ḤASAN AL-BASRĪ ABŪ SA'ĪD: The freed



slave of Zayd ibn Thābit, the example of ascetic scholars and one of the great characters of the Tabi‘īn. He died in 110. Ayyūb al-Sakhtīyānī said: ‘Had you seen him you would have said that you have never sat with a scholar of jurisprudence.’ Abu Ja‘far al-Bāqir said: ‘That is the person whose speech resembles that of the Prophets.’ Refer to his biography: Ibn Sa‘d: *al-Tabaqāt*, 7/156, *Ḥīyatu’l-Auliyā’*, 2/131, Aḥmad: *al-Zuhd*, 2/225, *Siyar al-A‘lām al-Nubulā’*, 4/563, *Tatbīkīrat al-Huffāz*, 1/66. Ibn al-Jawzī has dedicated a book for the life and virtues of this Imam which is printed and available.

**IBRĀHĪM IBN ADHAM:** The exemplary Imām, the knower and the master of ascetics, Abū Ishāq al-‘Ajli al-Khurāsānī al-Bakhlī, the resident of Syria (approximately 100-662). Abu Nu‘aym said: ‘I heard Sufyān say: ‘Ibrāhīm ibn Adham resembled Ibrāhīm al-Khalīl. Had he been a Sahābī he would have surely been a virtuous man.’ His biography can be found in *Ḥīyatu’l-Auliyā’* (7/367-8/58), *Tabaqāt al-Auliyā’* (5/15), *Siyar al-A‘lām al-Nubulā’* (7/387), Ibn Athir’s *al-Kamil* (6/56), *al-Bidāyah wa’l-Nihāyah* (10/135-145) and *Shatharāt al-Thabab* (1/255-256).

**IBN ḤIBBĀN:** Abū Ḥātim Muḥammad ibn Ḥibbān al-Tamīmī al-Bustī, the *Ḥāfiẓ*, *Mujtabid* and author of the famous *Ṣaḥīḥ ibn Ḥibbān*. He died in the year 354H.

**KAHMAS IBN AL-ḤASAN AL-TAMĪMĪ:** The Hanafite from al-Baṣra, the worshipper Abū al-Ḥaṣan, one of the major figures of the trustworthy. He was a pious worshiper who died in 149. From the examples of his plentiful worship is that he would pray 1000 units every day, and when he got weary he would say (to his soul): ‘Get up, you abode of all evil, for by

Allāh I have never been pleased with you for Allāh.' (Refer to his biography: *Tathkirat al-Huffāz*, 1/174, *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'* 6/316, *Khulasa al-Tabthhib al-Kamal*, 322, *Tabthhib al-Tabthhib*, 5408, *Shatharāt al-Dhabab*, 1/225.)

MAKHŪL: the scholar of Syria. His name is Makhūl ibn Abī Muslim Shahrab ibn Shathil ibn Sind ibn Shirwan ibn Yazdak ibn Yaghuth ibn Kisra. He was taken prisoner in Kabul but his master's identity is disputed over, but the most correct of opinions is that he was the slave of a Huthali woman. He was from the middle of the Tabi'in and died in 112, 113, or 114. Abū Hātim said: 'Nobody in Syria is as knowledgeable in jurisprudence as Makhūl.' For his biography, refer to: Ibn Sa'd: *al-Tabaqāt*, 7/453, *Hilyatu'l-Auliya'*, 5/177, *Tabthhib al-Asmā'i wa al-Lughāt*, 2/113, 114, *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 5/155, *Tathkirat al-Huffāz*, 1/107, *al-Ibar*, 1/140, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 9/305, *Husn al-Muhadara*, 1/119.

MA'RŪF AL-KARKHĪ: Abū Maḥfūz al-Baghdādī described by al-Hāfiz al-Dhahabī as: 'The authority of the ascetics, the blessing of our times.' Al-Hāfiz Ibn al-Jawzī has gathered his virtues in a book that has been printed. He passed away in 200 AH. Imām Aḥmad said that he is a person whose *du'ā* is answered. 'Abd Allāh ibn Aḥmad ibn Ḥanbal said: 'I said to my father: 'Did Ma'rūf have any knowledge?' to which he replied: 'My son, he had the basis of all knowledge and that is fear of Allāh.'" (Refer to his biography: *Tabaqāt al-Auliya'*, 280, 285, *Tabaqāt al-Sūfiyya*, 83-90, *Tabaqāt al-Ḥanabila*, 1/381, 389, *Sifāt al-Safwā*, 2/79-83, *Hilyatu'l-Auliya'*, 8/360, 368, *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, (0/339, 345.)

MUḤAMMAD IBN SĪRĪN: The Imām and Shaikh al-Islām, Abū

Bakr al-Anṣārī al-Anasī al-Baṣrī, the freed slave of Anas ibn Mālik, the companion and servant of Allāh's Messenger (ﷺ). He died in 110. Abū 'Uwana said: 'I saw Muḥammad ibn Sīrīn in the marketplace, and nobody saw him without him mentioning Allāh.' For his biography, refer to: Ibn Sa'd: *al-Ṭabaqāt*, 7/193, *Ḥīyatu'l-Auliya'*, 2/263, *Tārikh Baghdād*, 5/331, *Tathkirat al-Ḥuffāz*, 1/73, *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 4/606, *al-'Ibar*, 1/135, *Mir'āt al-Janān*, 1/232, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 9/267, *Shatharāt al-Thabab*, 1/138.

MUSLIM: Ibn al-Ḥajjāj ibn Muslim al-Qushayrī, Abū al-Ḥusain an-Naisābūrī, the Ḥāfiẓ and one of the great *Imāms* of this nation. He is the author of the *Ṣaḥīḥ* which is the most authentic book of ḥadīth after Bukhārī. He died in the year 261H.

AN-NASĀ'Ī: Abu 'Abdur-Raḥmān Aḥmad ibn Shu'ayb ibn 'Ali al-Khurasanī The author of the famous *Sunan*, the *mujahid* and *Ḥāfiẓ*. He was known for his strictness in grading ḥadīth narrators.

SA'D BIN ABĪ WAQQĀS: Sa'd ibn Mālik ibn Aḥīb ibn 'Abd Munāf al-Qurashī al-Zuhri Abū Ishāq ibn Abī Waqqās. One of the ten who were promised Paradise and one whose supplications were answered. He was the last of the ten to pass away in the year 55H.

SA'ĪD BIN AL-MUSAYYAB: Abū Muḥammad al-Qurashī al-Makhzūmī: The great Imam and scholar of Madīnah and the best of the Ṭabī'in in his time (d. 73). Al-Dhahabī said (*al-Siyar*, 4/219): 'He had outstanding knowledge and application of it.' For his biography, refer to: *Ḥīyatu'l-Auliya'*, 2/161, *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 4/217, 246, *Tathkirat al-Ḥuffāz*, 1/51, Ibn

Sa'd: *al-Tabaqāt* 5/119. Ibn al-Jawzī has dedicated a two volume book for his life and virtues as mentioned in *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 21/369, and *al-Thail*, 1/418.

SUFYAN IBN SA'ID: Sufyān ibn Sa'īd ibn Masrūq al-Thawrī Abū 'Abd Allāh al-Kufī: The trustworthy Ḥāfiẓ, jurist, worshiper, Imām and proof (d. 261). He was the most ascetic person of his time to the extent that he would deprive himself of any worldly matters in his gatherings. It is said that no-one in his time feared Allāh like he did nor did anybody have his reverence of Allāh. Al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī said (*Tathkīrat al-Ḥuffāẓ*, 1/206): "The virtues of this Imām are mentioned in a full volume by Ibn al-Jawzī. I have abridged them and mentioned a fair share in my book *al-Tārikh*." The biography of this esteemed Imām can be found in *al-Hilya*, 6/356-7/144, in approximately 180 pages, *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 7/229, and *Tārikh Baghdād*, 9/151-174.

SULAYMĀN IBN 'ABD AL-MĀLIK: ibn Marwān ibn al-Hakam ibn Abī al-'As ibn Umayyah, the caliph, Abū Ayyūb al-Qurashi al-Umawī. He was pledged allegiance to in 69 after his brother al-Walīd, and he passed away in 99. His caliphate lasted for two years, nine months and twenty days. Ibn Sirīn said: "Allāh have mercy on Sulaymān. He started his caliphate by reviving the prayer and finished it by appointing 'Umar ibn 'Abd al-'Azīz as his successor." For his biography, refer to: *al-Tabārī: al-Tārikh*, 6/546, Ibn al-Athīr: *al-Kāmil*, 5/37, *Wafayāt al-A'yān*, 2/460, 467, *al-Ibar*, 1/115, 118, *al-Bidāyah wa'l-Nihāyah*, 9/183, *Shatharāt al-Thahab*, 1/116, *Siyar al-A'lām al-Nubulā'*, 5/111.

RĀBI'A AL-'ADAWĪYYA: Umm al-Khayr bint Isma'īl, the pious,

covered, ascetic and God fearing worshipper from Basra. She is said to have lived for 80 years and died in 180 AH. The narration was related by al-Ḥāfiẓ al-Dhahabī by way of Ibn Abī al-Dunya: We were told by Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥusayn, I was told by ʿIsā ibn Maymun al-ʿAttār, I was told by ʿAbda bint Abī Shawwāl who used to serve Rābiʿa al-ʿAdawīyya: ʿRābiʿa used to pray the whole night. When morning would come she would lay down till the sky would turn to yellow. I used to hear her say: ʿMy soul, how much do you sleep and till what time do you stand up? You might sleep for just a little and never get up until the Day of Resurrection.” See (*Siyar al-Aʿlām al-Nubulāʾ*, 8/242, *al-Ibar*, 1/278), Ibn Khalakān (*Wafayāt al-Aʿyān*, 3/215), Ibn al-ʿImād (*Shatharāt al-Dhahab*, 1/193), Ibn Kathīr (*al-Bidāyah waʾl-Nihāyah*, 10/186), al-Khāṭib al-Baghdādī (*Tārikh Baghdād*, 2/40) and Ibn al-Jawzī (*Sifat al-Safwa*, 4/17-19). Al-Ḥāfiẓ Ibn al-Jawzī even dedicated a book for her virtues as mentioned by al-Dhahabī (*Siyar al-Aʿlām al-Nubulāʾ*, 8/242) and also named his oldest daughter and mother of his grandson Abū al-Muzāfir (the author of *Mirʾāt al-Zamān*) Rābiʿa.

AT-TIRMIDHĪ: Muḥammad ibn ʿIsā ibn Sawrah ibn Mūsā ibn ad-Ḍaḥḥāk as-Sulamī al-Tirmidhī, the *Imām*, *Ḥāfiẓ* and the author of the famous *Sunan*. He was trustworthy and precise and one of the students of Bukhārī. He died in the year 279H.

AL-ZUHRĪ: Muḥammad ibn Muslim ibn ʿUbaydullāh al-Qurasahī, Abū Bakr, one of the *Imāms* of this nation. He was one of the most knowledgeable people of his time of ḥadīth and the Qurʾān. He was trustworthy and precise and narrated many aḥādīth. He died in the year 124H.

## Index of Arabic Words

- AWLIYĀ': plural of *walī*; friend, ally, loyal companion. From the word *wilāyah* meaning loyalty and closeness, the opposite of enmity.
- BARZAKH: barrier, isthmus, A barrier that is erected between the deceased and this life preventing him from returning and a generic reference to the life that commences after death.
- BID'AH: innovation, that which is newly introduced into the religion of Allāh.
- DA'ĪF: weak; the ḥadīth that is neither ṣaḥīḥ nor ḥasan because it fails to meet one of their requirements. It is of varying degrees of severity, the most severe of which being maudū', fabricated.
- DHIKR: remembrance, recollection, technically referring the remembrance of Allāh.
- DU'Ā: supplication, invocation, it is an action of worship that may only be directed to Allāh. It is of two types, supplication through worship (*du'ā 'ibādah*) and supplication of request (*du'ā mas'alah*). The first type of *du'ā* can be understood when one understands that every act of worship is done with the unstated plea that Allāh accept that action of worship and the desire to draw closer to him; and hence attain His pleasure. Hence every action of worship is a type of request to Allāh. The second type of *du'ā* is whereby one explicitly asks his Lord of something such as 'O Allāh! Grant me good in this world and the Hereafter.' The second type includes the first type and the first type necessitates the second type.
- HADĪTH: A text attributed to the Prophet (ﷺ) describing his actions,

words, descriptions and tacit approvals. It consists of two portions, the body of the text (*matn*) and the *isnād*. Rarely the term is also used to refer to a text attributed to a Companion or a *Tābi'ī*.

**ḤASAN:** good, fair. A ḥadīth whose *isnād* is continuously linked of just, morally upright narrators but whose precision (*dabt*) falls short of the requirements of the ṣaḥīḥ ḥadīth; containing no irregularity (*shādh*) and no hidden defect (*'illah*). A ḥadīth can be ḥasan in and of itself, or contain a defect but still be ruled to be so due to supporting evidences.

**ḤSĀN:** beneficence, excellence. To worship Allāh as if one is seeing Him, and knowing that even though one sees Him not, He sees the servant.

**'ILM:** knowledge.

**ĪMĀN:** The firm belief, complete acknowledgement and acceptance of all that Allāh and His Messenger have commanded to have faith in, submitting to it both inwardly and outwardly. It is the acceptance and belief of the heart that includes the actions of the heart and body, therefore it encompasses the establishment of the whole religion. This is why the Imāms and Salaf used to say, 'Faith is the statement of the heart and tongue, action of the heart, tongue and limbs.' Hence it comprises statement, action and belief, it increases through obedience and decreases through disobedience. It includes the beliefs of faith, its morals and manners and the actions demanded by it.

**ISLĀM:** submission, submitting to the will of Allāh through following His law as revealed upon the tongue of the Messenger (ﷺ).

**ISNĀD:** support. The chain of authorities on which a narration is based, linking the end narrator of a narration to the one it is attributed to, be it the Prophet (ﷺ) or anyone else, narrator by narrator.

**JĀHILIYYAH:** Pre-Islāmic Ignorance. Technically this refers to the condition of a people before the guidance of Allāh reaches them, or the state of a people that prevents them from accepting the guidance of Allāh.

**JAHL:** ignorance.

**KALĀM:** speech, discourse. Technically used to refer to dialectics and

scholastic theology.

**KHALAF:** successors. A reference to those who followed a path other than the path of the Salaf.

**KHALĪFAH:** pl. *khulafā'*. Successor, representative. The Successors of the Prophet (ﷺ), head of the Islāmic state. Also called *Amir al-Mu'minin* or Leader of the Believers.

**KUFR:** denial, rejection, hiding, technically referring to disbelief. It can be major (removing a person from the fold of Islām) or minor (not removing a person from the fold of Islām).

**QADR:** Divine Decree and Destiny.

**QUR'ĀN:** The actual Word of Allāh revealed to the Prophet (ﷺ) in the Arabic language through the medium of the Angel Gabriel and the greatest miracle bestowed him. It consists of 114 chapters commencing with al-Fātiḥah and ending with an-Nās.

**RUQYĀ:** recitation used to cure an illness or disease. It can only be done in the Arabic tongue, in words whose meaning is understood, using verses of the Qur'ān or supplications of the Prophet combined with the belief that it is only Allāh who in reality gives the cure.

**ṢABR:** patience and steadfastness, the restraint of ones self to that which is dictated by the divine law. It is of three levels, steadfastness in the obedience of Allāh, steadfastness in avoiding the prohibited matters and patience at the onset of calamity. *Ikhlāṣ* can never be complete without *ṣidq* and *ṣidq* can never be complete without *ikhhlāṣ* and the two can never be complete without *ṣabr*. The person is patient through Allāh, i.e. seeking His aid Alone; for Allāh, i.e. arising out of love for Him and the desire to draw close to Him; and with Allāh, i.e. doing only that which He wills.

**ṢAḤĀBAH:** The Companions of the Prophet (ﷺ), those who saw him, believed in him and died upon that belief.

**ṢĀḤĪH:** correct, authentic. A ḥadith which has a continuously linked *isnād*, of just, morally upright and precise narrators; containing no irregularity (*shādh*) or hidden defect (*'illab*). Hence five conditions have to be met: the *isnād* being continuously linked; the justice (*'adl*) of the narrator; the precision (*dabt*) of the narrator; its not being



*shādh*; and its not containing an *‘illab*. The ḥadīth can be ṣaḥīḥ in and of itself, or it can contain a defect but still be ruled to be ṣaḥīḥ due to supporting evidences.

**SALAF:** predecessors. Technically used to refer to the best generations of Muslims, the first three generation: the *Ṣaḥābah*, the *Tābi‘ūn* and the *Tab‘ Tābi‘ūn* due to the ḥadīth, ‘The best of people are my generation, then the one that follows, then the one that follows.’

**SHIRK:** association, technically referring to directing a right that is due to Allāh Alone to another object of creation, either completely or partially. It can be major (removing a person from the fold of Islām) or minor (not removing a person from the fold of Islām).

**SUNNAH:** way, path. The actions, words, descriptions, commands, prohibitions and tacit approvals of the Prophet (ﷺ).

**TĀBI‘ŪN:** The generation following that of the Companions.

**TAB‘ TĀBI‘ŪN:** The generation following that of the *Tābi‘ūn*.

**TAQWĀ:** the basic meaning of which is setting a barrier between two things. This is why it is said that one *ittaqā* with his shield, i.e. he set it as a barrier between him and the one who wished him evil. Therefore it is as if the one who has *taqwa* (*muttaqī*) has used his following the commands of Allāh and avoiding His prohibitions as a barrier between himself and the Punishment. Hence he has preserved and fortified himself against the punishment of Allāh through his obeying Him.

**ṬARQ:** the practice of divination through drawing lines in the earth or equally the practice of throwing gravel onto the ground and divination by the shapes subsequently formed therein.

**TAWḤĪD:** unification, monotheism, the belief in the absolute Oneness of Allāh. It is to believe that Allāh Alone is the creator, nourisher, and sustainer of the worlds; it is to believe that Allāh Alone deserves to be worshipped; and it is to believe that He has unique and perfect Names and Attributes that far transcend anything that one can imagine.

**ṬIYARAH:** seeing bad omens in things.

**WAḤDATU-L-WUJŪD:** The unity of existence, the heretical belief that Allāh is everywhere and everything.